

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

magicolor [®] 5550/5570

2006.11 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

FIELD SERVICE TOTAL CONTENTS

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS	S-1
IMPORTANT NOTICE	S-1
DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER,	
WARNING AND CAUTION	S-1
SAFETY WARNINGS	S-2
WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE	S-18
MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN	
ACCIDENT	S-21
Composition of the service manual	C-1
Notation of the service manual	C-2

magicolor 5550/5570 Main Body

General	1
Maintenance	5
Adjustment/Setting	
Troubleshooting	
Appendix	

Lower Feeder Unit

General	1
Maintenance	3
Adjustment/Setting	13
Troubleshooting	15

Duplex Option

General	1
Maintenance	3
Troubleshooting	9

Staple Finisher

General	1
Maintenance	5
Troubleshooting	21

Blank Page

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS

Read carefully the safety and important warning Items described below to understand them before doing service work.

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Because of possible hazards to an inexperienced person servicing this product as well as the risk of damage to the product, KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. (hereafter called the KMBT) strongly recommends that all servicing be performed only by KMBT-trained service technicians.

Changes may have been made to this product to improve its performance after this Service Manual was printed. Accordingly, KMBT does not warrant, either explicitly or implicitly, that the information contained in this service manual is complete and accurate.

The user of this service manual must assume all risks of personal injury and/or damage to the product while servicing the product for which this service manual is intended.

Therefore, this service manual must be carefully read before doing service work both in the course of technical training and even after that, for performing maintenance and control of the product properly.

Keep this service manual also for future service.

DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION

In this service manual, each of three expressions " $\underline{\land}$ DANGER", " $\underline{\land}$ WARNING", and " $\underline{\land}$ CAUTION" is defined as follows together with a symbol mark to be used in a limited meaning.

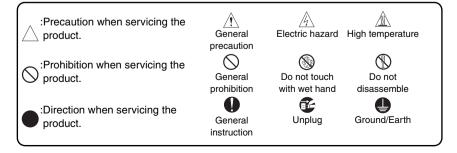
When servicing the product, the relevant works (disassembling, reassembling, adjustment, repair, maintenance, etc.) need to be conducted with utmost care.

 $_{
m D}$ DANGER: Action having a high possibility of suffering death or serious injury

WARNING: Action having a possibility of suffering death or serious injury

CAUTION: Action having a possibility of suffering a slight wound, medium trouble, and property damage

Symbols used for safety and important warning items are defined as follows:



SAFETY WARNINGS

[1] MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED BY KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

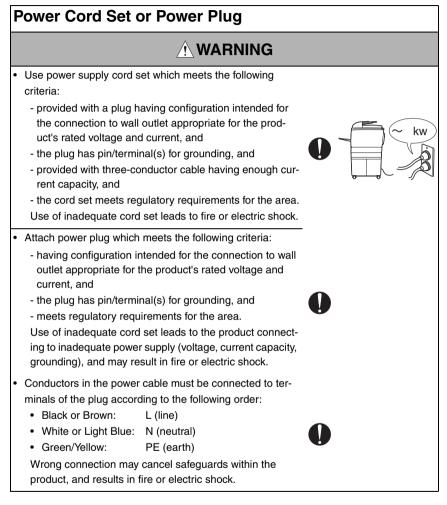
KONICA MINOLTA brand products are renowned for their high reliability. This reliability is achieved through high-quality design and a solid service network.

Product design is a highly complicated and delicate process where numerous mechanical, physical, and electrical aspects have to be taken into consideration, with the aim of arriving at proper tolerances and safety factors. For this reason, unauthorized modifications involve a high risk of degradation in performance and safety. Such modifications are therefore strictly prohibited. the points listed below are not exhaustive, but they illustrate the reasoning behind this policy.

F	Prohibited Actions		
	DANGER		
•	Using any cables or power cord not specified by KMBT.	\bigcirc	
•	Using any fuse or thermostat not specified by KMBT. Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.	\bigcirc	
•	Disabling fuse functions or bridging fuse terminals with wire, metal clips, solder or similar object.	\bigcirc	Ø,
•	Disabling relay functions (such as wedging paper between relay contacts)	\bigcirc	
•	Disabling safety functions (interlocks, safety circuits, etc.) Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.	\bigcirc	(Jacob)
•	Making any modification to the product unless instructed by KMBT	\bigcirc	
•	Using parts not specified by KMBT	\bigcirc	or [®]

[2] POWER PLUG SELECTION

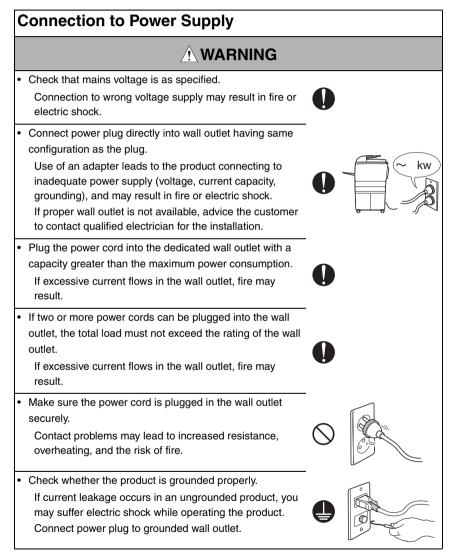
In some countries or areas, the power plug provided with the product may not fit wall outlet used in the area. In that case, it is obligation of customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) to attach appropriate power plug or power cord set in order to connect the product to the supply.



[3] CHECKPOINTS WHEN PERFORMING ON-SITE SERVICE

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are extensively tested before shipping, to ensure that all applicable safety standards are met, in order to protect the customer and customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) from the risk of injury. However, in daily use, any electrical equipment may be subject to parts wear and eventual failure. In order to maintain safety and reliability, the CE must perform regular safety checks.

1. Power Supply



Power Plug and Cord When using the power cord set (inlet type) that came with this product, make sure the connector is securely inserted in the inlet of the product. When securing measure is provided, secure the cord with the fixture properly. If the power cord (inlet type) is not connected to the product securely, a contact problem may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and risk of fire. Check whether the power cord is not stepped on or pinched by a table and so on. Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire. Check whether the power cord is damaged. Check whether the sheath is damaged. If the power plug, cord, or sheath is damaged, replace with a new power cord (with plug and connector on each end) specified by KMBT. Using the damaged power cord may result in fire or electric shock. • Do not bundle or tie the power cord. Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire. Check whether dust is collected around the power plug and wall outlet. Using the power plug and wall outlet without removing dust may result in fire. • Do not insert the power plug into the wall outlet with a wet hand. The risk of electric shock exists. When unplugging the power cord, grasp the plug, not the cable. The cable may be broken, leading to a risk of fire and electric shock.

Wiring

• Never use multi-plug adapters to plug multiple power cords in the same outlet.

If used, the risk of fire exists.

• When an extension cord is required, use a specified one. Current that can flow in the extension cord is limited, so using a too long extension cord may result in fire.

Do not use an extension cable reel with the cable taken up. Fire may result.

2. Installation Requirements

Prohibited Installation Places

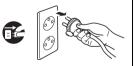
• Do not place the product near flammable materials or volatile materials that may catch fire.

A risk of fire exists.

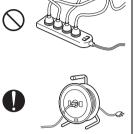
- Do not place the product in a place exposed to water such as rain.
 - A risk of fire and electric shock exists.

When not Using the Product for a long time

• When the product is not used over an extended period of time (holidays, etc.), switch it off and unplug the power cord.



Dust collected around the power plug and outlet may cause fire.



Ventilation

 The product generates ozone gas during operation, but it will not be harmful to the human body.

If a bad smell of ozone is present in the following cases, ventilate the room.

- a. When the product is used in a poorly ventilated room
- b. When taking a lot of copies
- c. When using multiple products at the same time

Stability

 Be sure to lock the caster stoppers.
 In the case of an earthquake and so on, the product may slide, leading to a injury.

Inspection before Servicing

Before conducting an inspection, read all relevant documentation (service manual, technical notices, etc.) and proceed with the inspection following the prescribed procedure in safety clothes, using only the prescribed tools. Do not make any adjustment not described in the documentation.

If the prescribed procedure or tool is not used, the product may break and a risk of injury or fire exists.

• Before conducting an inspection, be sure to disconnect the power plugs from the product and options.

When the power plug is inserted in the wall outlet, some units are still powered even if the POWER switch is turned OFF. A risk of electric shock exists.

• The area around the fixing unit is hot. You may get burnt.

Work Performed with the Product Powered On

🕂 WARNING

Take every care when making adjustments or performing an operation check with the product powered. If you make adjustments or perform an operation check with the external cover detached, you may touch live or high-voltage parts or you may be caught in moving gears or the timing belt, leading to a risk of injury.
Take every care when servicing with the external cover detached. High-voltage exists around the drum unit. A risk of electric shock exists.

S	Safety Checkpoints		
	WARNING		
•	Check the exterior and frame for edges, burrs, and other damage. The user or CE may be injured.	0	
•	Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples, and screws to fall into the product. They can short internal circuits and cause electric shock or fire.	\bigcirc	
•	Check wiring for squeezing and any other damage. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.	0	
•	Carefully remove all toner remnants and dust from electri- cal parts and electrode units such as a charging corona unit. Current can leak, leading to a risk of product trouble or fire.	0	
•	Check high-voltage cables and sheaths for any damage. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.	•	

Safety Checkpoints Check electrode units such as a charging corona unit for deterioration and sign of leakage. Current can leak. leading to a risk of trouble or fire. Before disassembling or adjusting the write unit (P/H unit) incorporating a laser, make sure that the power cord has been disconnected. The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight. Do not remove the cover of the write unit. Do not supply power with the write unit shifted from the specified mounting position. The laser light can enter your eve. leading to a risk of loss of eyesight. When replacing a lithium battery, replace it with a new lithium battery specified in the Parts Guide Manual. Dispose of the used lithium battery using the method specified by local authority. Improper replacement can cause explosion. After replacing a part to which AC voltage is applied (e.g., optical lamp and fixing lamp), be sure to check the installation state. A risk of fire exists. Check the interlock switch and actuator for loosening and check whether the interlock functions properly. If the interlock does not function, you may receive an electric shock or be injured when you insert your hand in the product (e.g., for clearing paper jam). Make sure the wiring cannot come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.

Safety Checkpoints

Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors, etc. that were removed for safety check and maintenance have been reinstalled in the original location. (Pay special attention to forgotten connectors, pinched cables, forgotten screws, etc.)



A risk of product trouble, electric shock, and fire exists.

Handling of Consumables

 Toner and developer are not harmful substances, but care must be taken not to breathe excessive amounts or let the substances come into contact with eyes, etc. It may be stimulative.

If the substances get in the eye, rinse with plenty of water immediately. When symptoms are noticeable, consult a physician.

• Never throw the used cartridge and toner into fire. You may be burned due to dust explosion.

Handling of Service Materials

• Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

Drum cleaner (isopropyl alcohol) and roller cleaner (acetone-based) are highly flammable and must be handled with care. A risk of fire exists.

 Do not replace the cover or turn the product ON before any solvent remnants on the cleaned parts have fully evaporated.

A risk of fire exists.



Handling of Service Materials

CAUTION

• Use only a small amount of cleaner at a time and take care not to spill any liquid. If this happens, immediately wipe it off. A risk of fire exists. • When using any solvent, ventilate the room well. Breathing large quantities of organic solvents can lead to discomfort.

[4] Used Batteries Precautions

ALL Areas

CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Germany

VORSICHT!

Explosionsgefahr bei unsachgemäßem Austausch der Batterie. Ersatz nur durch denselben oder einen vom Hersteller empfohlenen gleichwertigen Typ. Entsorgung gebrauchter Batterien nach Angaben des Herstellers.

France

ATTENTION

Il y a danger d'explosion s'il y a remplacement incorrect de la batterie. Remplacer uniquement avec une batterie du même type ou d'un type équivalent recommandé par le constructeur.

Mettre au rebut les batteries usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.

Denmark

ADVARSEL!

Lithiumbatteri - Eksplosionsfare ved fejlagtig håndtering. Udskiftning må kun ske med batteri af samme fabrikat og type. Levér det brugte batteri tilbage til leverandøren.

Finland, Sweden

VAROITUS

Paristo voi räjähtää, jos se on virheellisesti asennettu. Vaihda paristo ainoastaan laitevalmistajan suosittelemaan tyyppiin. Hävitä käytetty paristo valmistajan ohjeiden mukaisesti.

VARNING

Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte.

Använd samma batterityp eller en ekvivalent typ som rekommenderas av apparattillverkaren.

Kassera använt batteri enligt fabrikantens instruktion.

Norway

ADVARSEL

Eksplosjonsfare ved feilaktig skifte av batteri.

Benytt samme batteritype eller en tilsvarende type anbefalt av apparatfabrikanten. Brukte batterier kasseres i henhold til fabrikantens instruksjoner.

[5] Laser Safety

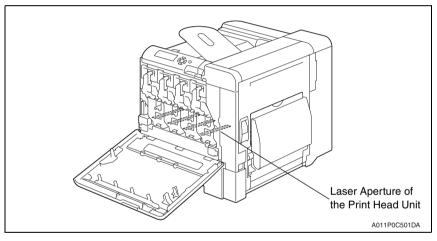
 This is a digital machine certified as a Class 1 laser product. There is no possibility of danger from a laser, provided the machine is serviced according to the instruction in this manual.

5.1 Internal Laser Radiation

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	15 mW
Maximum average radiation power (*)	8.5 μW
Wavelength	770-800 nm

*at laser aperture of the Print Head Unit

- This product employs a Class 3B laser diode that emits an invisible laser beam. The laser diode and the scanning polygon mirror are incorporated in the print head unit.
- The print head unit is NOT A FIELD SERVICEABLE ITEM. Therefore, the print head unit should not be opened under any circumstances.



U.S.A., Canada (CDRH Regulation)

- This machine is certified as a Class 1 Laser product under Radiation Performance Standard according to the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act of 1990. Compliance is mandatory for Laser products marketed in the United States and is reported to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). This means that the device does not produce hazardous laser radiation.
- The label shown on page S-16 indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

CAUTION

• Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	15 mW
Wavelength	770-800 nm

All Areas

CAUTION

• Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	15 mW
Wavelength	770-800 nm

Denmark

ADVARSEL

 Usynlig laserstråling ved åbning, når sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude af funktion. Undgå udsættelse for stråling. Klasse 1 laser produkt der opfylder IEC60825-1 sikkerheds kravene.

halvlederlaser	
Laserdiodens højeste styrke	15 mW
bølgelængden	770-800 nm

Finland, Sweden

LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT

VAROITUS!

 Laitteen käyttäminen muulla kuin tässä käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

puolijohdelaser		
Laserdiodin suurin teho	15 mW	
aallonpituus	770-800 nm	

VARNING!

 Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i denna bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

halvle	edarlaser
Den maximala effekten för laserdioden	15 mW
våglängden	770-800 nm

VARO!

 Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettaessa olet alttiina näkymättomälle lasersäteilylle. Älä katso säteeseen.

VARNING!

 Osynlig laserstråining när denna del är öppnad och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej stråien.

Norway

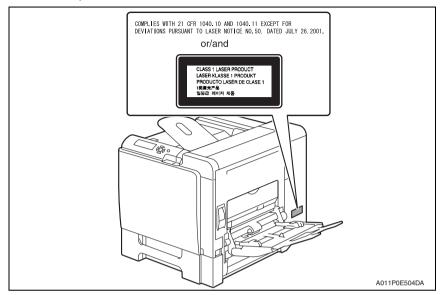
ADVERSEL

 Dersom apparatet brukes på annen måte enn spesifisert i denne bruksanvisning, kan brukeren utsettes för unsynlig laserstrålning, som overskrider grensen for laser klass 1.

halvleder laser		
Maksimal effekt till laserdiode	15 mW	
bølgelengde	770-800 nm	

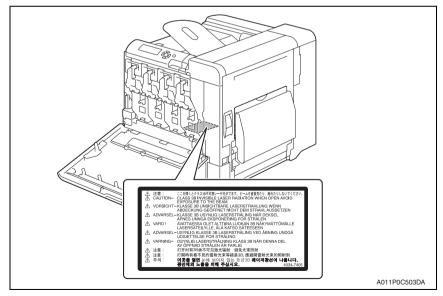
5.2 Laser Safety Label

• A laser safety label is attached to the inside of the machine as shown below.



5.3 Laser Caution Label

• A laser caution label is attached to the outside of the machine as shown below.



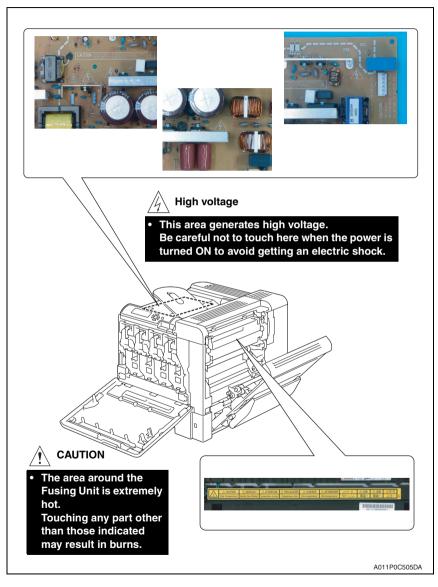
5.4 PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING THE LASER EQUIPMENT

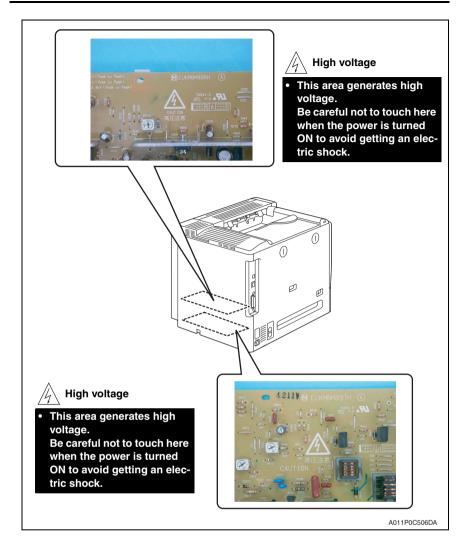
- When laser protective goggles are to be used, select ones with a lens conforming to the above specifications.
- When a disassembly job needs to be performed in the laser beam path, such as when working around the printerhead and PC Drum, be sure first to turn the printer OFF.
- If the job requires that the printer be left ON, take off your watch and ring and wear laser protective goggles.
- A highly reflective tool can be dangerous if it is brought into the laser beam path. Use utmost care when handling tools on the user's premises.
- The Print Head is not to be disassembled or adjusted in the field. Replace the Unit or Assembly including the Control Board. Therefore, remove the Laser Diode, and do not perform Control Board trimmer adjustment.

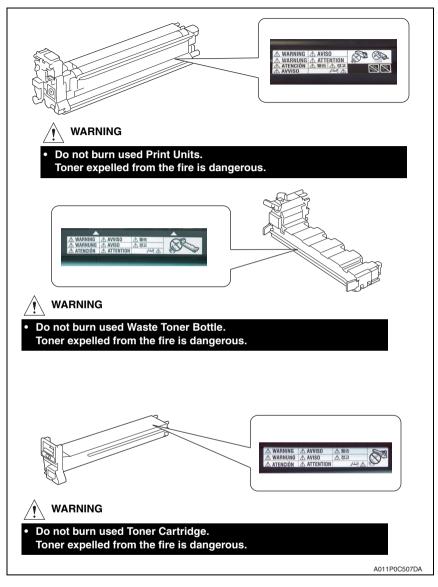
WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE

Caution labels shown are attached in some areas on/in the machine.

When accessing these areas for maintenance, repair, or adjustment, special care should be taken to avoid burns and electric shock.







 You may be burned or injured if you touch any area that you are advised not to touch by any caution label. Do not remove caution labels. If any caution label has come off or soiled and therefore the caution cannot be read, contact our Service Office.

MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT

- If an accident has occurred, the distributor who has been notified first must immediately take emergency measures to provide relief to affected persons and to prevent further damage.
- 2. If a report of a serious accident has been received from a customer, an on-site evaluation must be carried out quickly and KMBT must be notified.
- 3. To determine the cause of the accident, conditions and materials must be recorded through direct on-site checks, in accordance with instructions issued by KMBT.
- 4. For reports and measures concerning serious accidents, follow the regulations specified by every distributor.

Blank Page

Composition of the service manual

This service manual consists of Theory of Operation section and Field Service section to explain the main machine and its corresponding options.

Theory of Operation section gives, as information for the CE to get a full understanding of the product, a rough outline of the object and role of each function, the relationship between the electrical system and the mechanical system, and the timing of operation of each part.

Field Service section gives, as information required by the CE at the site (or at the customer's premise), a rough outline of the service schedule and its details, maintenance steps, the object and role of each adjustment, error codes and supplementary information.

The basic configuration of each section is as follows. However some options may not be applied to the following configuration.

<Theory of Operation section>

OUTLINE: COMPOSITION/OPERATION:	Explanation of system configuration, product specifications, unit configuration, and paper path Explanation of configuration of each unit, operating system, and control system
<field section="" service=""></field>	
GENERAL:	Explanation of system configuration, and product specifications
MAINTENANCE:	Explanation of service schedule, maintenance steps, ser- vice tools, removal/reinstallation methods of major parts, and firmware version up method etc.
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING:	Explanation of utility mode, service mode, and mechanical adjustment etc.
TROUBLESHOOTING:	Explanation of lists of jam codes and error codes, and their countermeasures etc.
APPENDIX:	Parts layout drawings, connector layout drawings, timing chart, overall layout drawing are attached.

Notation of the service manual

A. Product name

In this manual, each of the products is described as follows:

(1)	PCRB	Print control board
(2)	magicolor 5550/5570	Main body
(3)	Microsoft Windows 95:	Windows 95
	Microsoft Windows 98:	Windows 98
	Microsoft Windows Me:	Windows Me
	Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:	Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT
	Microsoft Windows 2000:	Windows 2000
	Microsoft Windows XP:	Windows XP
	When the description is made in combi	nation of the OS's mentioned above:
		Windows 95/98/Me
		Windows NT 4.0/2000
		Windows NT/2000/XP

B. Brand name

The company names and product names mentioned in this manual are the brand name or the registered trademark of each company.

Windows 95/98/Me/ NT/2000/XP

C. Feeding direction

- When the long side of the paper is parallel with the feeding direction, it is called short edge feeding. The feeding direction which is perpendicular to the short edge feeding is called the long edge feeding.
- Short edge feeding will be identified with [S (abbreviation for Short edge feeding)] on the paper size. No specific notation is added for the long edge feeding.
 When the size has only the short edge feeding with no long edge feeding, [S] will not be added to the paper size.

<Sample notation>

Paper size	Feeding direction	Notation
A4	Long edge feeding	A4
A4	Short edge feeding	A4S
A3	Short edge feeding	A3



SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

magicolor [®] 5550/5570 Main Body

2006.11 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2006/11	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

magicolor 5550/5570 Main Body

General

1.	System configuration	1
2.	Product specifications	2

Maintenance

3.	Period	lical check	5
3.1	Mair	ntenance items	5
3.	1.1	Parts to be replaced by users (CRU)	5
3.	1.2	Parts to be replaced by a service engineer (FRU)	6
3.2	Mair	ntenance parts	7
3.	2.1	Replacement parts	7
3.3	Con	cept of parts life	8
3.4	Maiı	ntenance Procedure (periodical check parts)	9
З.	4.1	Replacing the tray 2 feed roller	9
3.	4.2	Replacing the tray 1 feed roller	10
3.	4.3	Replacing the ozone filter	12
3.	4.4	Replacing the toner cartridge (C/M/Y/Bk)	13
3.	4.5	Replacing the print unit (C,M,Y,K)	15
З	4.6	Replacing the waste toner bottle	19
3.	4.7	Replacing the transfer roller	19
3.	4.8	Replacing the transfer belt	21
3.	4.9	Replacing the fusing unit	23
4.	Servio	se tool	24
4.1	CE	ool list	24
4.2	Con	sumable parts	24
4.	2.1	Toner cartridge	24
4.	2.2	Print unit	24
4.	2.3	Waste toner bottle	24
5.	Firmw	vare upgrade	25
5.1	Firm	ware upgrading procedure	25
5.	1.1	Checking the current firmware version	25
5.	1.2	Updating method	25
5.	1.3	Checking the version after the firmware update	38
6.	Other		39

i

6.1	Disa	assembly/adjustment-prohibited items	39
6.2	Disa	assembly/assembly/cleaning list (other parts)	40
6.2	.1	Disassembly/assembly parts list	40
6.2	.2	Cleaning parts list	41
6.3	Disa	assembly/assembly procedure	42
6.3	.1	Front door	42
6.3	.2	Upper front cover	42
6.3	.3	Right front cover	43
6.3	.4	Left cover	43
6.3	.5	Rear Cover	44
6.3	.6	Exit tray	44
6.3	.7	Rear right cover	45
6.3	.8	Tray 2	46
6.3	.9	Tray 1	46
6.3	.10	Operation board (OB)	47
6.3	.11	Hard disk kit (option)	47
6.3	.12	Print control board (PRCB)	48
6.3	.13	MFP board (MFPB)	50
6.3	.14	DC power supply (DCPU)	52
6.3	.15	High voltage unit /1 (HV1)	54
6.3	.16	High voltage unit /2 (HV2)	55
6.3	.17	Toner level sensor board (TLSB)	56
6.3	.18	PH Unit	58
6.3	.19	Driving unit	64
6.3	.20	Print control board fan motor (FM5)	65
6.3	.21	Backup Battery	66
6.3	.22	PWB box /1	66
6.3	.23	PWB box /2	67
6.3	.24	Color PC drum motor (M2)	68
6.3	.25	Developing motor /K (M5)	68
6.3	.26	Toner supply motor /Y, M (M6)	68
6.3	.27	Toner supply motor /C, K (M7)	69
6.3	.28	Fusing motor (M4)	69
6.3	.29	Intermediate transport motor (M3)	69
6.3	.30	Registration roller clutch (CL2)	70
6.3	.31	Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5)	71
6.3	.32	Pressure/retraction clutch /1 (CL4)	73
6.3	.33	Media feed clutch /1 (CL1)	74

6.3.34	Media feed clutch /2 (CL3)	77
6.3.35	Temperature/ humidity sensor (TEM/HUMS)	
6.3.36	IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr (IDCSB/R, IDCSB/L)	
6.4 C	eaning procedure	
6.4.1	Tray 1 feed roller	
6.4.2	Tray 2 feed roller	
6.4.3	Laser irradiation section	

Adjustment/Setting

7.	How to	o use the adjustment section85
8.	Descr	iption of the control panel
8.1	Cont	trol panel display86
8.1	.1	Parts of the control panel display
8.1	.2	Message structure
8.1	.3	Normal messages
8.1	.4	Operator call messages
8.1	.5	Service call messages
8.1	.6	Help screen
8.2	List	of control panel messages96
8.2	2.1	Normal messages96
8.2	2.2	Operator call messages
8.2	2.3	Service call messages 101
8.3	Can	celling a print job 103
9.	Menu	
9.1	List	of menu functions104
9.2	PRC	OF/PRINT MENU 108
9.3	PRI	NT MENU 108
9.3	8.1	CONFIGURATION PG 108
9.3	8.2	DEMO PAGE 109
9.3	8.3	STATISTICS PAGE
9.3	8.4	FONT LIST 113
9.3	8.5	MENU MAP 113
9.3	8.6	DIRECTORY LIST
9.4	PAP	ER MENU 114
9.4	l.1	PAPER SOURCE 114
9.4	.2	DUPLEX
9.4	.3	COPIES
9.4	.4	COLLATE

9.4.5	FINISHING	118
9.4.6	JOB SEPARATION	119
9.4.7	IMAGE ROTATION	119
9.5 QL	JALITY MENU	119
9.5.1	COLOR MODE	119
9.5.2	BRIGHTNESS	119
9.5.3	HALFTONE	120
9.5.4	EDGE ENHANCEMENT	120
9.5.5	EDGE STRENGTH	121
9.5.6	ECONOMY PRINT	121
9.5.7	GLOSSY MODE	122
9.5.8	PCL SETTING	122
9.5.9	PS SETTING	124
9.5.10	CALIBRATION	128
9.5.11	COLOR SEPARATION	129
9.6 ME	MORY DIRECT	130
9.6.1	LIST OF FILES	130
9.6.2	TYPE OF FILES	130
9.7 CA	MERA DIRECT	130
9.7.1	PAPER SOURCE	130
9.7.2	LAYOUT	131
9.7.3	PAPER MARGIN	131
9.7.4	IMAGE QUALITY	131
9.8 INT	TERFACE MENU	134
9.8.1	JOB TIMEOUT	134
9.8.2	ETHERNET	134
9.8.3	MEMORY DIRECT	136
9.8.4	CAMERA DIRECT	137
9.9 SY	S DEFAULT MENU	137
9.9.1	LANGUAGE	137
9.9.2	EMULATION	137
9.9.3	PAPER	140
9.9.4	GRAY SCALE PAGE	141
9.9.5	STARTUP OPTIONS	141
9.9.6	AUTO CONTINUE	141
9.9.7	HOLD JOB TIMEOUT	142
9.9.8	ENERGY SAVER	142
9.9.9	ENERGY SAVER TIME	142

Appendix

9.9.10	MENU TIMEOUT 142
9.9.11	LCD CONTRAST
9.9.12	SECURITY
9.9.13	CLOCK
9.9.14	HDD FORMAT
9.9.15	CARD FORMAT
9.9.16	RESTORE DEFAULTS
9.9.17	ENABLE WARNING 152
9.10 MA	INTENANCE MENU 154
9.10.1	How to enter the MAINTENANCE MENU 154
9.10.2	PRINT MENU154
9.10.3	ALIGNMENT
9.10.4	SUPPLIES
10. Adjus	tment item list
11. SER\	/ICE MENU
11.1 Hov	v to enter the service menu
11.2 Ser	vice menu function tree
11.3 SEF	RVICE MENU 162
11.3.1	SERIAL NUMBER
11.3.2	FIRMWARE VERSION 162
11.3.3	ALIGNMENT 162
11.3.4	DIAGNOSIS MENU
11.4 SU	PPLIES
11.4.1	REPLACE
11.5 RE	STORE PASSWARD 171
11.6 SO	FT SWITCH 171
	r functions
	vriting security information into the hard disk kit and the compact flash 172
12.1.1	Outline
12.1.2	Procedure

Troubleshooting

13.	Jam	display1	73
13.1	Mis	sfeed display 1	73
13.2	Mis	sfeed display resetting procedure 1	74
13.3	Sei	nsor layout1	74
13.4	Sol	lution1	75
13.	4.1	Initial check items1	75
13.	4.2	Misfeed at tray 2 media feed section1	76

13.4.4 Misfeed at transfer section 177 13.4.5 Misfeed at fusing/exit section 178 13.4.6 Media misfeed in control logic 179 14. Malfunction code 180 14.1 Trouble code (service call) 183 14.3 Solution 183 14.3 10010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 186 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0006: Fusing motor malfunction 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190	13.4.3	Misfeed at tray1 media feed section	176
13.4.6 Media misfeed in control logic	13.4.4	Misfeed at transfer section	177
14. Malfunction code. 180 14.1 Trouble codes (service call) 180 14.1 Trouble code list. 180 14.2 Resetting a malfunction 183 14.3 Solution 184 14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /K, Canaffunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0600: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Eusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0501: Abnormal	13.4.5	Misfeed at fusing/exit section	178
14.1 Trouble code (service call) 180 14.1.1 Trouble code list 180 14.2 Resetting a malfunction 183 14.3 Solution 184 14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190	13.4.6	Media misfeed in control logic	179
14.1.1 Trouble code list 180 14.2 Resetting a malfunction 183 14.3 Solution 184 14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0600: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0009: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller temperature 190	14. Malfu	Inction code	180
14.2 Resetting a malfunction 183 14.3 Solution 184 14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0606: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.3 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.4 0501: Shonrmally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3	14.1 Trou	uble codes (service call)	180
14.3 Solution 184 14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0600: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Eusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature <	14.1.1	Trouble code list	180
14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction 184 14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 0018: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.10 3030: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.10 3050: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.11 0520: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.13 0521: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190	14.2 Res	setting a malfunction	183
14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction 184 14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190	14.3 Solu	ution	184
14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction 185 14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0520: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22	14.3.1	0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction	184
14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction. 185 14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0521: Coner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22	14.3.2	0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction	184
14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction. 186 14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.20 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191	14.3.3	0018: Developing motor /K malfunction	185
14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction 186 14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191	14.3.4	001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction	185
14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction 187 14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 <	14.3.5	0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction	186
14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction 187 14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.14 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26	14.3.6	004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction	186
14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure 188 14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.28 C0	14.3.7	004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction	187
14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure 189 14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at star	14.3.8	0060: Fusing motor malfunction	187
14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction 189 14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standar	14.3.9	0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure	188
14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction 190 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure 190 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.16 0521: Abnormally high heating roller temperature 190 14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature 190 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM e	14.3.10	0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure	189
14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure	14.3.11	0300: Polygon motor malfunction	189
14.3.140501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure19014.3.150510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature19014.3.160511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.170520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature19014.3.180521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.190F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction19114.3.200F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction19114.3.210F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction19114.3.220F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction19114.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.12	0310: Laser malfunction	190
14.3.150510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature19014.3.160511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.170520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature19014.3.180521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.190F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction19114.3.200F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction19114.3.210F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction19114.3.220F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction19114.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.13	0500: Heating roller warm-up failure	190
14.3.160511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.170520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature19014.3.180521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.190F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction19114.3.200F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction19114.3.210F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction19114.3.220F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction19114.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.14	0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure	190
14.3.170520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature19014.3.180521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.190F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction19114.3.200F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction19114.3.210F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction19114.3.220F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction19114.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.15	0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature	190
14.3.180521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature19014.3.190F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction19114.3.200F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction19114.3.210F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction19114.3.220F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction19114.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.16	0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature	190
14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction 191 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.17	0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature	190
14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction 191 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction 191 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.18	0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature	190
14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction	14.3.19	0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction	191
14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction 191 14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction 191 14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.20	0F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction	191
14.3.23133B: Finisher communication malfunction19114.3.2413C0: MFP board malfunction19114.3.2513E2: Flash ROM write error19214.3.2613E3: Flash ROM device fault19214.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error19214.3.28C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)192	14.3.21	0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction	191
14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction 191 14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.22	0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction	191
14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error 192 14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault 192 14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error 192 14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.23	133B: Finisher communication malfunction	191
14.3.26 13E3: Flash ROM device fault	14.3.24	13C0: MFP board malfunction	191
14.3.273FFB: Finisher flash ROM error	14.3.25	13E2: Flash ROM write error	192
14.3.28 C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 192	14.3.26	13E3: Flash ROM device fault	192
	14.3.27	3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error	192
14.3.29 C003: RAM error at startup (expanded memory) 192	14.3.28	C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory)	192
	14.3.29	C003: RAM error at startup (expanded memory)	192

14.3.30	C013: MAC address error at startup 1	93
14.3.31	C015: BOOT ROM error at startup 1	93
14.3.32	C025: Controller ROM error (Configuration information error) 1	93
14.3.33	C026: Controller ROM error (Access error) 1	93
14.3.34	C027: Controller ROM error (Data error) 1	93
14.3.35	C050: HDD access error 1	93
14.3.36	C051: HDD full error 1	94
14.3.37	C052: Compact flash access error 1	94
14.3.38	C053: Compact flash full error1	95
14.3.39	C060: Firmware update error1	95
14.3.40	C071: Hardware configuration error1	96
14.3.41	FFFF: Interface Communication error1	96
15. Powe	er supply troubles1	97
15.1 Mac	chine is not energized at all (DCPU operation check) 1	97
15.2 Con	ntrol panel indicators do not light 1	97
	ing heaters do not operate1	
-	e quality problems	
	ution	99
16.1.1	White lines in FD, white bands in FD, colored lines in FD, and colored bands in FD1	99
16.1.2	White lines in CD, white bands in CD, colored lines in CD, and colored bands in CD	200
16.1.3	Uneven density in FD2	01
16.1.4	Uneven density in CD	02
16.1.5	Low image density2	03
16.1.6	Gradation reproduction failure2	04
16.1.7	Foggy background2	05
16.1.8	Poor color reproduction2	06
16.1.9	Void areas, white spots2	07
16.1.10	Colored spots	80
16.1.11	Blurred image2	09
16.1.12	Blank copy, black copy2	10
16.1.13	Incorrect color image registration2	11
16.1.14	Poor fusing performance, offset2	12
16.1.15	Brush effect, blurred image2	13
16.1.16	Back marking2	14
16.1.17	Uneven pitch	15
16.1.18	No print cycles can be run as commanded via the network2	16

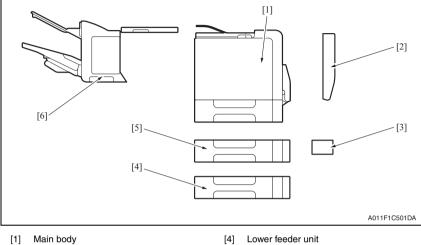
Appendix

17.	Parts layout drawing	. 217
17.1	Main body	. 217
17.2	Lower feeder unit (option)	. 220
	Duplex option (option)	
	Staple finisher (option)	
	Connector layout drawing	
	Timing chart	

General

System configuration 1.

System front view



- [2] Duplex option
- [3] Hard disk kit

- Lower feeder unit [5]
- Staple finisher [6]

2. Product specifications

А. Туре

Туре	Desktop tandem full-color laser beam printer			
Printing system	Semiconductor laser and electrostatic image transfer to media			
Exposure system	4 laser diode and polygon mirror			
PC drum type	OPC (organic photo conductor)			
Photoconductor cleaning	Blade cleaning system			
Print resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi x 4 bit			
Media feeding system	Two-way system (Tray 1: 100 sheets, Tray 2: 500 sheets) * Expandable up to a four-way system by adding lower feeder units (up to two)			
Developing system	Single-element developing system			
Charging system	Needle charging system (with ozone suctionfeature)			
Image transfer system	Intermediate transfer belt system			
Media separating system	Curvature separation + charge-neutralizing system			
Fusing system	Belt fusing			
Media exit system	Face down (Output tray capacity: A4S/Letter, 250 sheets)			

B. Functions

Warm-up time	Average: 45 sec. or less (Power on to ready, at ambient temperature of 23° C/73.4° F and rated source voltage)					
Process speed	magicolor 5550 152 mm/sec (plain paper, full-color mode)					
	magicolor 5570 185 mm/sec (plain paper, full-color mode)					
First-page-out-time	magicolor 5550 14.2 second (Full-color mode, A4S/Letter, 1-sided mode, plain paper)					
	magicolor 5570 14.0 second (Full-color mode, A4S/Letter, 1-sided mode, plain paper)					
Print speed	magicolor 5550 Full-color mode : 27.0 pages/min. (Letter, 1-sided print, plain paper) 25.6 pages/min. (A4S, 1-sided print, plain paper) Monochrome mode : 31.7 pages/min. (Letter, 1-sided print, plain paper) 30.0 pages/min. (A4S, 1-sided print, plain paper)					
	magicolor 5570 Full-color mode : 31.7 pages/min. (Letter, 1-sided print, plain paper) 30.0 pages/min. (A4S, 1-sided print, plain paper) Monochrome mode : 37.0 pages/min. (Letter, 1-sided print, plain paper) 35.0 pages/min. (A4S, 1-sided print, plain paper)					

Media sizes	Tray 1 Standard size: *SEF only • Legal, Letter, Government Letter, Statement, Executive, Folio, SP Folio, UK Quatro, Foolscap, Government, Legal • A4S, B5, B5(ISO), A5, A6, B6, Photo size • 16K, Kai16, Kai32 Envelope: • Com10, C5, C6, DL, Monarch • Youkei #4, Youkei 4, Choukei #3, Youkei 0, Choukei #4 Postcard: • Japanese postcard, Double postcard Custom size: • Minimum size /92 mm x 148 mm (3.6 inch x 5.8 inch) • Maximum size /218 mm x 356 mm (8.6 inch x 14.0 inch) • Long size paper /357 mm to 1,200 mm (14.0 inch x 47.2 inch) (1-sided mode only) Tray 2
	A4S/LetterS
Media types	Tray 1 Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m² / 16 to 24 lb) Recycled paper (60 to 90 g/m² / 16 to 24 lb) Thick stock 1 (91 to 150 g/m² / 24 to 40 lb) Thick stock 2 (128 to 210 g/m² / 34 to 56 lb) Glossy paper 1 (100 to 150 g/m² / 26.6 to 40 lb) Glossy paper 2 (128 to 210 g/m² / 34 to 56 lb) OHP transparencies Letterhead Envelopes Labels Postcards Double postcards *1 Long size paper (up to 1200 mm/47.2 inches) Tray 2
	• Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m² / 16 to 24 lb)
	 Recycled paper (60 to 90 g/m² / 16 to 24 lb)
Tray capacities	Tray 1 Plain paper and recycled paper: 100 sheets Thick stock 1, thick stock 2,glossy paper 1, glossy paper 2, postcards, OHP transparencies, letterhead, labels, postcards and double postcards: 20 sheets Envelopes: 10 sheets Long size paper: 1 sheet * No indication of remaining media amount
	<u>Tray 2</u> Plain paper and recycled paper: 500 sheets * Indication of remaining media amount available
Interfaces	 Parallel (IEEE 1284) Support only an ECP mode 10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T (IEEE 802.3) Ethernet USB 2.0 (High-Speed) Host USB (PictBridge 1.0)
CPU	magicolor 5550 Freescale PowerPC 7448, 733 MHz
	magicolor 5570 Freescale PowerPC 7448, 866 MHz

	<u>Standard memory</u> DDR-SDRAM 133 MHz 184 pin non ECC 256 MB (Expandable up to a 1024 MB)		
Hard disk	Optional: 40 GB		
Compact flash card	Commercially available compact flash cards of 256 MB, 512 MB, 1 GB or more storage capacity are supported. (Microdrive is not supported)		

*1: Folded double postcards cannot be used.

Lower feeder unit:	Only plain paper and recycled paper weighing 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24
	lb) can be loaded.
Duplex option:	Only plain paper and recycled paper weighing 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24
	lb) can be fed through the unit.
For details, see the	Service Manual for each option

For details, see the Service Manual for each option.

C. Maintenance

Machine durability	400,000 prints or 5 years, whichever comes first

D. Machine specifications

Power requirements Voltage:	AC 110 to 127 V, -10 % +6 % (AC 120 V -10 % +10 %: only US/Canada) AC 220 to 240 V, -10 % +10 %			
Frequency:	50 to 60 Hz ± 3 Hz			
Max power consumption	1400 W or less			
Dimensions	420 mm (W) x 526 mm (D) x 420 mm (H) 16.5 inch (W) x 20.7 inch (D) x 16.5 inch (H)			
Weight	32.4 kg (71.4 lb) or less without consumables			
Operating noise	During standby :39 dB (A) or less During printing :56 dB (A) or less			

E. Operating Environment

Temperature	10° to 35° C / 50° to 95° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C / 18° F or less per hour)			
Humidity	15% to 85% (with a fluctuation of 20%/h)			

NOTE

• These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Maintenance

3. Periodical check

3.1 Maintenance items

3.1.1 Parts to be replaced by users (CRU)

No	Class	Part to be replaced	Number of prints	Clean	Replace	Description
1		Standard-capacity toner cartridge *(C,M,Y,K)	6,000 (MP **)		•	
2	Processing	High-capacity toner cartridge *(C,M,Y,K)	12,000 (MP **)		•	
3		Print unit (C,M,Y,K)	30,000 (MP **)		•	
4		Ozone filter*****	120,000		•	
5	Tray 2 media feed section	Feed roller	When malfunction occurs	•		
6	Tray 1 media feed section	Feed roller	When malfunction occurs	•		
7		Transfer belt unit	120,000 (MP **, 2P/J ^{**})		•	
8	Image transfer	Transfer roller	120,000 (MP **, 2P/J ^{**})		•	
9	section	Waste toner bottle	36,000 (K ^{****})			
3			9,000 (Y,M,C,K ^{*****})			

* : The life of the toner cartridge furnished with the machine at the time of shipment is 3,000 printed pages

- ** : Continuous printing
- *** : 2 pages/job
- **** : When printed in black only
- ***** : When printed in color only

****** : The transfer roller and ozone filter are available as a kit and must be replaced at the same time

3.1.2 Parts to be replaced by a service engineer (FRU)

No	Class	Part to be replaced	Number of prints	Clean	Replace	Description
1	Fusing section		150,000 (MP *)			
			130,000 (2P/J ^{**})		•	
2	Tray 2 media feed section	Feed roller	300,000		•	
3	Tray 1 media feed section	Feed roller	300,000		•	
4	Lower feeder unit	Feed roller	300,000		•	

* : Continuous printing** : 2 pages/job

magicolor 5550/5570

3.2 Maintenance parts

- To ensure that the machine produces good prints and to extend its service life, it is recommended that the maintenance jobs described in this schedule be carried out as instructed.
- The replacing time is to be determined by the total counter value.
- Maintenance conditions are based on A4S or letterS,1-side print.

3.2.1 Replacement parts

A. Main body

No	Class	Maintenance parts	Quan tity	Actual durable cycle	Parts No.	Descrip- tion	Ref.page
1	Tray 2	Feed roller	1	300,000	#### #### ##		P.9
2	Tray 1	Feed roller	1	300,000	#### #### ##		P.10
3	Fusing section Fusing unit	1	150,000 (MP *)	#### #### ##		P.23	
3			130,000 (2P/J ^{**})				

* : Continuous printing

** : 2 pages/job

B. Option

No	Class	Maintenance parts	Quan tity	Actual durable cycle	Parts No.	Descrip- tions	Ref.page
1	Lower feeder unit	Feed roller	1	300,000	#### #### ##		*1

*1: For details, see the optional lower feeder unit service manual.

3.3 Concept of parts life

	Description	Near life value	Life value
	 Detected by the waste toner full 	Monochrome	Monochrome
	sensor.	: 32,000 prints	: 36,000 prints
Waste toner bottle	 A waste toner full condition is detected when about 4,000* mono- chrome printed pages are pro- duced or about 1,000* color printed pages are produced after a waste toner near full condition has been detected. 	Color: 8,000 prints	Color: 9,000 prints
	 Based on the fusing motor rotation 	120,000 prints	150,000 prints
	data, the fusing unit driving time is	(Continuous printing)	(Continuous printing)
Fusing unit	counted. Comparing the fusing unit driving time count value with the number of pages printed, the machine detects the one that reaches its life value earlier.	104,000 prints (2P/J)	130,000 prints (2P/J)
Ozone filter	_	—	120,000 prints
Transfer roller	 Based on the number of pages printed, the life is detected. 	96,000 prints	120,000 prints
Transfer belt	 Base on the intermediate transport motor rotation data, the transfer belt driving time is counted and the life is detected. 	96,000 prints	120,000 prints
Print unit	 Base on the color PC drum motor or intermediate transport motor rotation data, the print unit driving time is counted. Comparing the print unit driving time count value and the number of pages printed, the machine detects the one that reaches its life value earlier. 	25,500 prints	30,000 prints

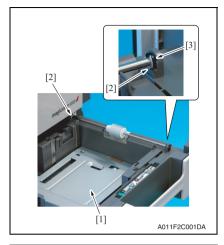
A. Conditions for life specifications values

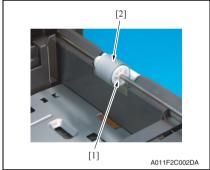
• The life specification values represent the number of pages printed or figures equivalent to it when the given conditions (see the table given below) are met. They may be more or less, depending on the machine operating conditions of each individual user.

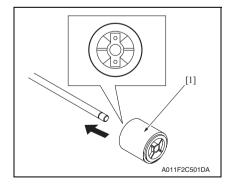
Item	Description
Job type	2 consecutive pages (2 pages/job)
Media size	A4S or LetterS
Color ratio	Black to Color = 1:1
Original density	C/W ratio = 5% each color

3.4 Maintenance Procedure (periodical check parts)

3.4.1 Replacing the tray 2 feed roller







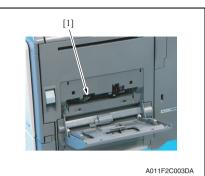
- 1. Slide out Tray 2.
- 2. Lock the media lift plate [1].
- 3. Snap off two C-clips [2] and remove the bearing [3] at the front.

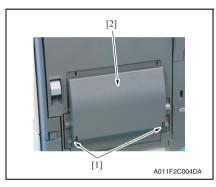
4. Snap off the C-clip [1] and remove the feed roller [2].

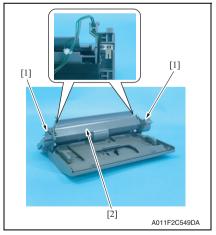
NOTE

• When reinstalling the feed roller [1], make sure that it is mounted in the direction shown in the illustration on the left. magicolor 5550/5570

3.4.2 Replacing the tray 1 feed roller



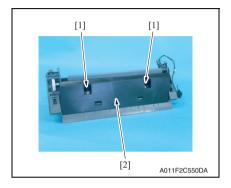


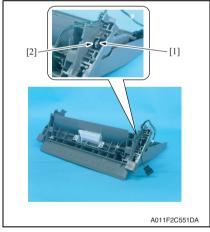


- 1. Open the tray 1.
- 2. Remove the tray 1 cover.
- 3. Disconnect the connector [1].

- 4. Move two lock levers [1] up.
- 5. Remove the tray 1 [2].

6. Press two pins [1] in, and lift the feed roller cover [2] upward to remove it.





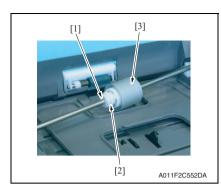
NOTE

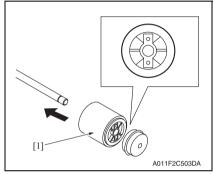
Make sure that the bearing goes all the way into both of [1] shown on the left when installing the feed roller cover.

3. Periodical check

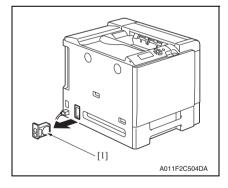
- 7. Remove the two screws [1].
- 8. Remove the cover [2].

9. Snap off C-clip [1] and remove the bearing [2] at the front.





3.4.3 Replacing the ozone filter



10. Snap off the C-clip [1] and then remove the clutch [2] and the feed roller [3].

NOTE

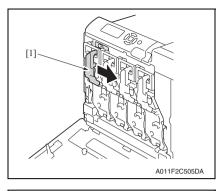
• When reinstalling the feed roller [1] and the clutch, make sure that it is mounted in the direction shown in the illustration on the left.

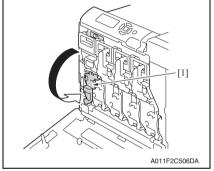
- 1. Hold onto the handle of the ozone filter [1] and slide it out of the machine.
- 2. Install a new ozone filter in the machine.
- 3. Replace the transfer roller.

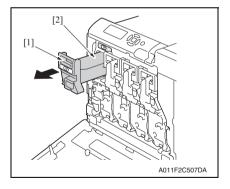
See P.19

magicolor 5550/5570

3.4.4 Replacing the toner cartridge (C/M/Y/Bk)



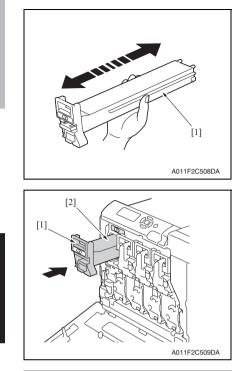


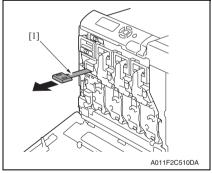


- A. Removal procedure
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Slide the lock lever [1] to the right.

3. Pull down the lock lever to unlock the toner cartridge.

4. Grasp the toner cartridge handle [1] and pull the toner cartridge [2] out.

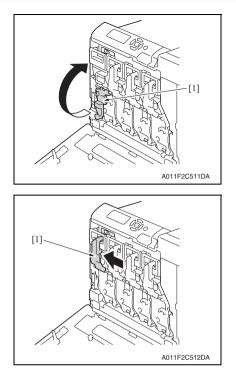




- B. Reinstallation procedure
- 1. Take the toner cartridge out of its plastic bag.
- 2. Gently shake the toner cartridge [1] three times to agitate the toner.

3. Grasp the toner cartridge handle [1] and slide the toner cartridge [2] in.

4. Remove the protective sheet by pulling it.



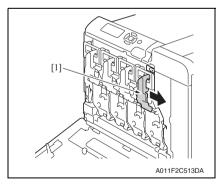
5. Raise the lock lever [1].

- 6. Slide the lock lever [1] to the left to lock the toner cartridge.
- 7. Close the front door.

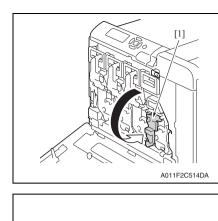
NOTE

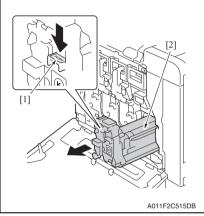
When removing or reinstalling the toner cartridge while it is being used or after it
has been used up, do not hold it or place it upside down, as spilled toner could
result.

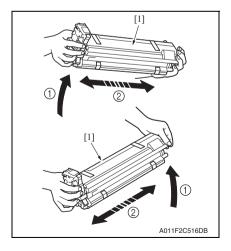
3.4.5 Replacing the print unit (C,M,Y,K)



- A. Removal procedure
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Slide the lock lever [1] to the right.







3. Pull down the lock lever [1] to unlock the print unit.

- 4. Press down the "Push" marked place [1].
- 5. Pull the print unit [2] out.

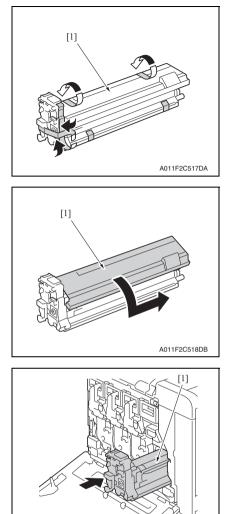
- B. Reinstallation procedure
- After removing the plastic bag, hold the print unit [1] with your hands and shake it two times as shown in the left illustration.

2. Take the print unit [1] out of the plastic bag and remove the shipping tape.

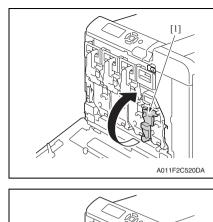
3. Remove the protective cover [1].

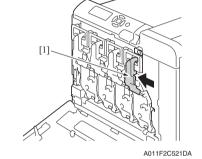
4. Slide the print unit [1] in.

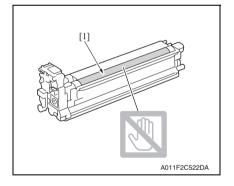
magicolor 5550/5570



A011F2C519DA







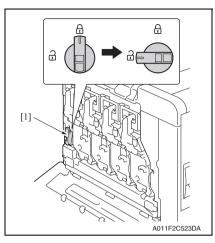
5. Raise the lock lever [1].

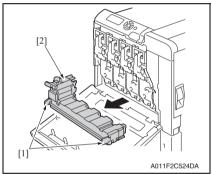
- 6. Slide the lock lever [1] to the left to lock the print unit.
- 7. Close the front door.

NOTE

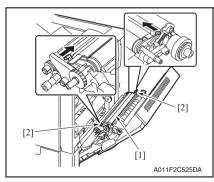
• When installing and removing the print unit, take care not to touch the surface of the PC drum [1].

3.4.6 Replacing the waste toner bottle





3.4.7 Replacing the transfer roller



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Turn the lever [1] to unlock the waste toner bottle.

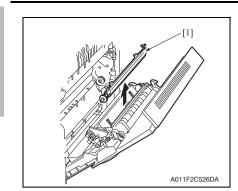
 Holding the left and right handles [1], remove the waste toner bottle [2].
 To reinstall, reverse the order of

1. Open the right door.

removal.

2. Press the locks [2] located at the front and rear ends of the transfer roller [1] inward to unlock the transfer roller [1].

magicolor 5550/5570



- *3.* Holding the levers, remove the transfer roller [1].
- 4. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- 5. Replacing the ozone filter.

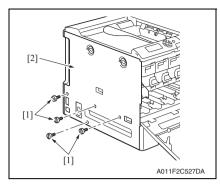
See P.12

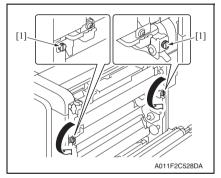
- From the Menu, select [MAINTE-NANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS. ROLLER.] and execute this function to reset the transfer roller counter value.
- For details, see "Adjustment/Setting."
- From the Menu, select [QUALITY MENU] → [CARIBRATION] → [AIDC PROCESS] and execute this function.
- For details, see "Adjustment/Setting."

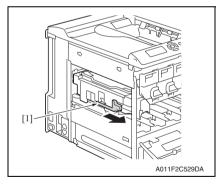
magicolor 5550/5570

Maintenance

3.4.8 Replacing the transfer belt





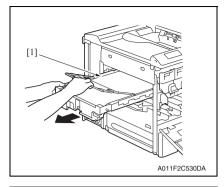


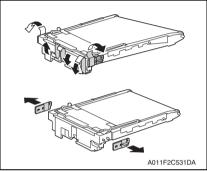
- 1. Turn OFF the power switch.
- 2. Open the front door.
- *3.* Remove the print unit (C,M,Y,K). See P.15

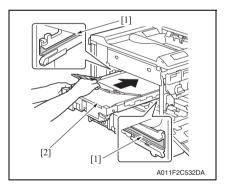
4. Remove the waste toner bottle. See P.19

- 5. Remove four screws [1], and remove the left cover [2].
- 6. Open the right door.
- 7. Loosen two screws [1] and unlock the transfer belt.

8. Slide the shutter lever [1] to the front.







9. Grasp the transfer belt handle and pull the transfer belt out.

10. Remove the packing material from the new transfer belt.

NOTE

• Use care not to touch the belt of the transfer belt.

11. Insert the transfer belt [1] along the rail [2].

NOTE

- When inserting the unit, use care not to allow the docking gear to hit against the rail or other mechanism to prevent damage.
- 12. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- 13. From the Menu, select [MAINTE-NANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS. BELT] and execute this function to reset the transfer belt counter value.

For details, see "Adjustment/Setting."

 14. From the Menu, select [QUALITY MENU] → [CALIBRATION] → [AIDC PROCESS] and execute this function.

For details, see "Adjustment/Setting."

3.4.9 Replacing the fusing unit

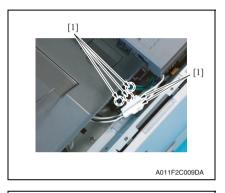
Before replacing the fusing unit, make sure that it has sufficiently cooled down.

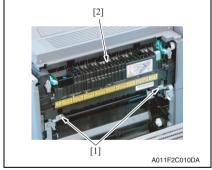
- 1. Turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and let the machine to stand idle for about 20 min.
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Remove the operation board.

See P.47

4. Remove the upper front cover.

See P.42





5. Disconnect the five connectors [1].

Maintenance

- 6. Open the right door.
- 7. Remove two screws [1], and remove the fusing unit [2].
- 8. Install the new fusing unit.
- From the Menu, select [MAINTE-NANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [FUSER UNIT] and execute this function to reset the fusing unit counter value.

For details, see "Adjustment/Setting."

4. Service tool

4.1 CE tool list

Tool name	Shape	Quantity	Remarks
Laser lens cleaning tool	A011F2C544DA	1	#### #### ##

4.2 Consumable parts

4.2.1 Toner cartridge

Part name	Life expectancy
Standard-capacity toner cartridge - black (K)	6,000 prints
Standard-capacity toner cartridge - yellow (Y)	6,000 prints
Standard-capacity toner cartridge - magenta (M)	6,000 prints
Standard-capacity toner cartridge - cyan (C)	6,000 prints
High-capacity toner cartridge - black (K)	12,000 prints
High-capacity toner cartridge - yellow (Y)	12,000 prints
High-capacity toner cartridge - magenta (M)	12,000 prints
High-capacity toner cartridge - cyan (C)	12,000 prints

For the predetermined conditions, See P.8

NOTE

• The life of the toner cartridges furnished with the machine at the time of shipment is 3000 prints.

4.2.2 Print unit

Part name	Life expectancy
Black print unit	30,000 prints
Yellow print unit	30,000 prints
Magenta print unit	30,000 prints
Cyan print unit	30,000 prints

For the predetermined conditions, See P.8

4.2.3 Waste toner bottle

Part name	Life expectancy
Waste toner bottle	Monochrome: 36,000 prints
	Color: 9,000 prints

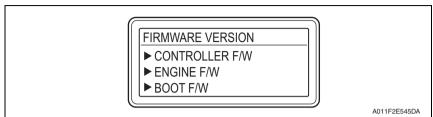
For the predetermined conditions, See P.8

5. Firmware upgrade

5.1 Firmware upgrading procedure

5.1.1 Checking the current firmware version

- 1. Display [SERVICE MENU].
- 2. Display [FIRMWARE VERSION].



3. Select the firmware to be updated and check the current version. For details, See P.162 of "Adjustment/Setting."

5.1.2 Updating method

• To update the firmware, perform "Firmware Updater."

A. System requirements

Computer	Windows	 PC with a Pentium 2, 400 MHz or faster processor (A Pentium 3, 500 MHz or faster processor is recommended.)
Computer	Macintosh	Apple Macintosh computer with a PowerPC G3 or later processor (A PowerPC G4 or later is recommended.)
OS	Windows	 Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition/Professional, Windows 2000
03	Macintosh	MacOS X 10.2 or later (We recommend installing the newest patch.)
Available	Windows	Approximately 20 to 26 MB
hard disk space	Macintosh	Approximately 30 to 42 MB
Memory		128 MB or more
Interface	Windows	 10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T Ethernet USB 2.0 (High Speed) compliant Parallel (IEEE 1284)
	Macintosh	10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T Ethernet

1

B. Connection for Windows

(1) Starting the firmware updater

NOTE

- Before starting the firmware updater, turn on the printer, and make sure that it is correctly connected.
- 1. Download the firmware updater.
- 2. Double-click "5550 (or 5570) Gxxxxxxx.exe."
- 3. The printer name and firmware version are displayed. Click the [Next].

💑 The Updater	Σ	3
This tool is for updating the firmware.		
Printer name: KONICA MINOLTA magicolo	or 5460	
Firmware version: Good word		
	Next Exit	
		A011F2E55

4. The license agreement is displayed. Select "I agree", and then click the [Next].

📩 The Updater	1
Licence	
In consideration of payment of the license fee, which is a part of the purchase price, KONICA MINOLTA grants to you a non-exclusive right to use the software subject to the following conditions:	
KONICA MINOLTA grants to you a non-exclusive right to use the software, without the right to distribute, rent, sub-license, or lease the software or documentation. You may not alter, modify, or adapt the software or documentation, including but not limited to, translating, decompiling, disassembling, creating derivative works, or reverse engineering. The software product may be duplicated or copied as specified in the manual for your own personal use and all removable copies must bear the copyright notice contained on the original software. However, the software may not be duplicated for the purposes of resell or distribution.	
C I do not agree	
Next Exit	
	A011F2E556DA

5. The list of printer drivers is displayed. Select the appropriate connection for the environment where the printer is being used.

Please select the port for updating. Printer driver list: KONICA MINOLTA mcB48 F1 KONICA MINOLTA mcB48 F1 C Network port C Local port C Printer/P address	😹 The Update	er			
C Local port	Printer	r driver list: ICA MINOLTA mc5458 Pt		_	
	сь	_ocal port	 		

• For a network connection: Select "Network port."

See P.28

• For a local connection: Select "Local port."

See P.31

 When specifying the IP address of the printer: Select "Printer IP address." See P.32

NOTE

- If you select "Network port" or "Local port", make sure that the printer driver has been installed.
- If you select "Printer IP address", the firmware can be updated even if a printer driver is not already installed.

٦

(2) For a network connection

- 1. When "Network port" is selected, a list of printer drivers for the network port appears.
- 2. Select the printer driver, and then click the [Next].

Please select the port for upd	lating.		
Printer driver list:			
KONICA MINOLTA			
KONICA MINOLTA	1010		
Network port			
 Local port 			
C Printer IP address			
S THINGTH GUGIESS	J		

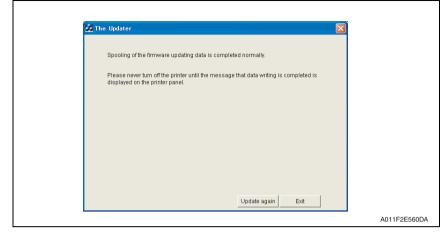
3. A message appears, requesting confirmation to update the firmware. Click the [Start] to begin transferring the firmware.

NOTE

• Do not turn off the printer while its firmware is being updated.

😹 Th	e Updater 🛛 🔀	
	Please do not update the firmware during printing.	
	And, please do not turn off the printer during updating.	
	If you are ready, please start now.	
	Start Exit	
		A011F2E55

4. The result of the firmware transfer is displayed. Click the [Exit].



5. If the firmware was successfully updated, the printer will automatically restart.

٦

<lf spooling of the data fails>

NOTE

- If spooling fails, data may remain in the printer spooler. Delete this data, and then try again.
- 1. If spooling of the data fails, the following message appears.
- 2. Click [OK].

5450G01601BPR1	
Spooling of data has failed.	
<u>(OK</u>]	
	A011F2E561DA

3. Check that the printer is ready and that it is correctly connected, and then click the [Update again].

🐉 The	Updater 🔀	
	Spooling of the firmware updating data has failed.	
	Please check if the printer is ready and connected correctly, and then retry.	
	Update again Exit	
		A011F2E562

(3) For a local connection

- 1. When "Local port" is selected, a list of printer drivers for the local port appears.
- 2. Select the printer driver, and then click the [Next].

Please select the port for updating. Printer driver list KONICA MINOLTA ====================================	
C Network port	
C Printer IP address	
Next Exit	

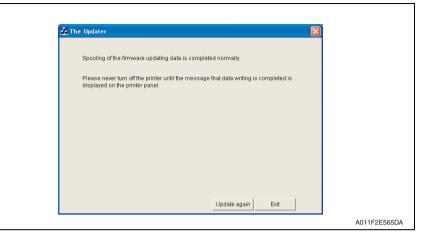
3. A message appears, requesting confirmation to update the firmware. Click the [Start] to begin transferring the firmware.

NOTE

• Do not turn off the printer while its firmware is being updated.

👪 The Update	r 🛛	
Please o	do not update the firmware during printing.	
And, plea	ase do not turn off the printer during updating.	
lf you are	e ready, please start now.	
	Start	
		A011

4. The result of the firmware transfer is displayed. Click the [Exit].



5. If the firmware was successfully updated, the printer will automatically restart.

<lf spooling of the data fails>

For details,	see "For	a network	connection."
See P.30			

(4) When specifying the IP address of the printer

- 1. When "Printer IP address" is selected, the "Printer IP address" box becomes available.
- 2. Type in the IP address, and then click the [Next].

C Network port C Local port Printer IP address 192.168.1.3	Please select the port for updating. Printer driver list	
	C Local port	

3. A message appears, requesting confirmation to update the firmware. Click the [Start] to begin transferring the firmware.

NOTE

Г

Г

• Do not turn off the printer while its firmware is being updated.

The Updater	
Please do not update the firmware during printing.	
And, please do not turn off the printer during updating.	
lf you are ready, please start now.	
Start	
	A011F2E56

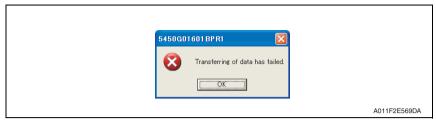
4. The result of the firmware transfer is displayed. Click the [Exit].

<i>3</i> .	The Updater	
	Please do not update the firmware during printing.	
	And, please do not turn off the printer during updating.	
	lf you are ready, please start now.	
	Start Exit	
		A011F2E

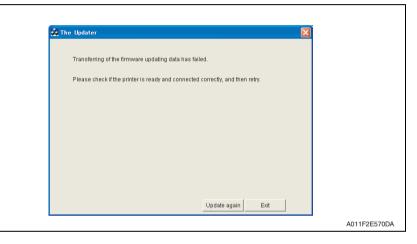
5. If the firmware was successfully updated, the printer will automatically restart.

<If transferring of the data fails>

- 1. If transferring of the data fails, the following message appears.
- 2. Click [OK].



3. Check that the printer is ready and that it is correctly connected, and then click the [Update again].



C. Connection for Macintosh

(1) Starting the firmware updater and the updating procedure

NOTE

- Before starting the firmware updater, turn on the printer, and make sure that it is correctly connected.
- 1. Download the firmware updater.
- 2. Double-click "5550 (or 5570)Gxxxxxxx."
- 3. The printer name and firmware version are displayed. Click the [Next].

000	The Updater	
This tool is for upo	dating the firmware.	
Printer name:	KONICA MINOLTA magicolor 5450	
Firmware version:	COIROI	
	Next Exit	
		A011F2E57

4. The license agreement is displayed. Select "I agree", and then click the [Next].

Licence	
In consideration of payment of the license fee, which is a part of the purchase price, KONICA MINDLTA grants to you a non-exclusive right to use the software subject to the following conditions: KONICA MINDLTA grants to you a non-exclusive right to use the software, without the right to distribute, rent,	
○ I do not agree I agree Next Exit	

magicolor 5550/5570

5. The screen for specifying the IP address of the printer appears.

O O The Updater	
Please enter the printer IP address.	
Next Exit	

6. Type in the IP address, and then click the [Next].

O O The Updater	
Please enter the printer IP address.	
Next Exit	A011F2E574DA

7. A message appears, requesting confirmation to update the firmware. Click the [Start] to begin transferring the firmware.

NOTE

• Do not turn off the printer while its firmware is being updated.

Please do not update the firmware during printing. And, please do not turn off the printer during updating.	
If you are ready, please start now.	A011F2E575DA

8. The result of the firmware transfer is displayed. Click the [Exit].



9. If the firmware was successfully updated, the printer will automatically restart.

If transferring of the data fails>

- 1. If transferring of the data fails, the following message appears.
- 2. Click [OK].

|--|--|

3. Check that the printer is ready and that it is correctly connected, and then click the [Update again].

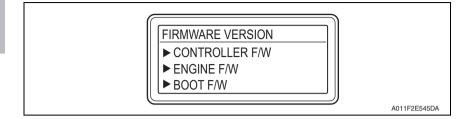
O O The Updater	
Transferring of the firmware updating data has failed.	
Please check if the printer is ready and connected correctly, and then retry.	
Update again Exit	
	A011F2E578DA

Maintenance

magicolor 5550/5570

5.1.3 Checking the version after the firmware update

- 1. Display [SERVICE MENU].
- 2. Display [FIRMWARE VERSION].



3. Select the firmware that has been updated and check the current version. For details, See P.162 of "Adjustment/Setting."

6. Other

6.1 Disassembly/adjustment-prohibited items

- A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied
- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.
- C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.
- D. Removal of PWBs

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

6.2 Disassembly/assembly/cleaning list (other parts)

6.2.1 Disassembly/assembly parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
1		Front door	P.42
2	Exterior parts	Upper front cover	P.42
3		Right front cover	P.43
4		Left cover	P.43
5		Rear cover	P.44
6		Exit tray	P.44
7		Rear right cover	P.45
8		Tray 2	P.46
9		Tray 1	P.46
10		Operation board (OB)	P.47
11		Hard disk kit (option)	P.47
12		Print control board (PRCB)	P.48
13	Boards and etc.	MFP board (MFPB)	P.50
14	Boards and etc.	DC power supply (DCPU)	P.52
15		High voltage unit/1 (HV1)	P.54
16		High voltage unit/2 (HV2)	P.55
17		Toner level sensor board (TLSB)	P.56
18	Unit	PH Unit	P.58
19	Offic	Driving unit	P.64
20		Print control board fan motor (FM5)	P.65
21		Backup battery	P.66
22		PWB box /1	P.66
23		PWB box /2	P.67
24		Color PC drum motor (M2)	P.68
25		Intermediate transport motor (M3)	P.69
26		Fusing motor (M4)	P.69
27		Developing motor /K (M5)	P.68
28	Other Parts	Toner supply motor/Y,M (M6)	P.68
29	Unel Falls	Toner supply motor/C,K (M7)	P.69
30		Media feed clutch /1 (CL1)	P.74
31		Media feed clutch /2 (CL3)	P.77
32		Registration roller clutch (CL2)	P.70
33		Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5)	P.71
34		Pressure/retraction clutch /1 (CL4)	P.73
35		Temperature/ humidity sensor (TEM/HUMS)	P.81
36		IDC sensor board /Re (IDCSB/R)	P.81
37		IDC sensor board /Fr (IDCSB/F)	

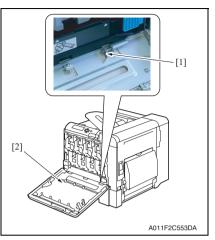
6.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
1	Tray 1	Feed roller	P.83
2	Tray 2	Feed roller	P.83
3	Processing section	Laser irradiation section	P.84

6. Other

6.3 Disassembly/assembly procedure

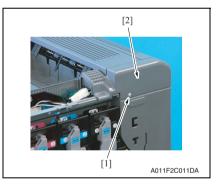
6.3.1 Front door



1. Open the front door.

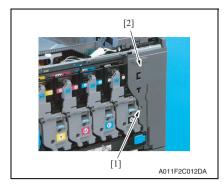
- 2. Remove the E-ring [1].
- 3. Slide the front door [2] to the left off the machine.

6.3.2 Upper front cover

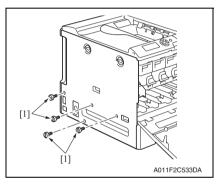


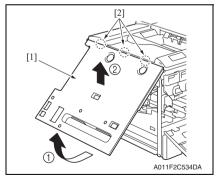
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the operation board. See P.47
- 3. Remove the screw [1], and remove the upper front cover [2].

6.3.3 Right front cover



6.3.4 Left cover





1. Remove the front door.

See P.42

- *2.* Remove the upper front cover. See P.42
- 3. Remove the screw [1], and remove the right front cover [6].

- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the four screws [1].

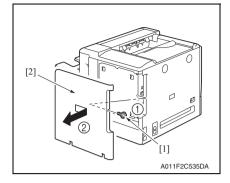
magicolor 5550/5570

3. Remove the left cover [1].

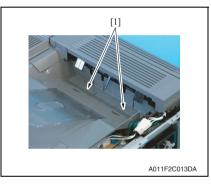
NOTE

 Remove the left cover as shown in the illustration on the left, taking care not to damage the three tabs
 [2] on the upper edge of the left cover.

6.3.5 Rear Cover



6.3.6 Exit tray



- 1. Remove the screw [1].
- 2. Slide the rear cover [2] in the direction shown in the illustration on the left off the machine.

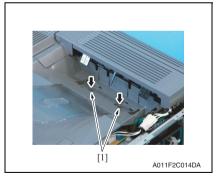
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the operation board.

See P.47

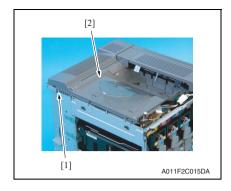
3. Remove the upper front cover.

See P.42

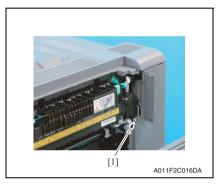
- 4. Remove the left cover. See P.43
- 5. Remove two covers [1].
- 6. Remove two screws [1].

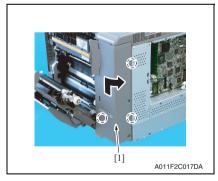


magicolor 5550/5570



6.3.7 Rear right cover





7. Remove the screw [1], and remove te exit tray [2].

- 3. Open the cover and remove the screw [1].

Open the right door.

2. Remove the rear cover.

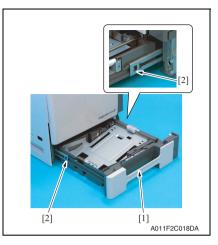
1.

See P.44

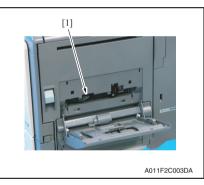
4. Unhook three tabs, and remove the rear right cover [1].

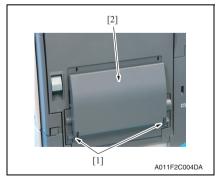
6. Other

6.3.8 Tray 2



6.3.9 Tray 1



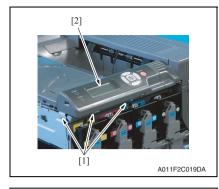


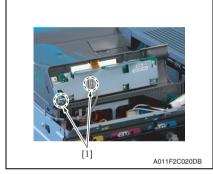
- 1. Slide out tray 2 [1].
- 2. Pressing the tabs [2] on both sides, remove tray 1 [1].

- 1. Open the tray 1.
- 2. Remove the tray 1 cover.
- 3. Disconnect the connector [1].

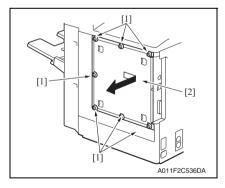
- 4. Move two lock levers [1] up.
- 5. Remove the tray 1.

Operation board (OB) 6.3.10





6.3.11 Hard disk kit (option)



- 1. Open the front door.
- Remove the left cover. 2.

See P.43

3. Remove three screws [1], and remove the operation board [2].

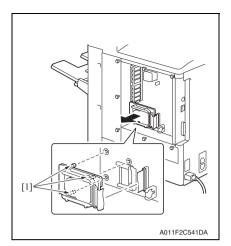
4. Disconnect two connectors [1].

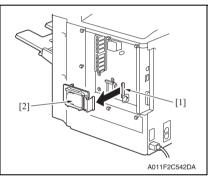
magicolor 5550/5570

1. Remove the rear cover.

See P.44

2. Loosen seven screws [1], and remove the print control board protective shield [2].





3. Remove three mounting pins [1].

Field Service Ver. 1.0 Nov. 2006

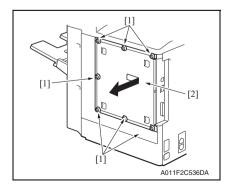
4. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the hard disk kit [2].

6.3.12 Print control board (PRCB)

NOTE

• After the Print control board replacement, you need to set the language to be displayed on the control panel again.

See P.137

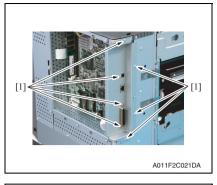


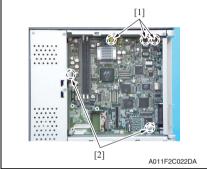
1. Remove the Rear Cover.

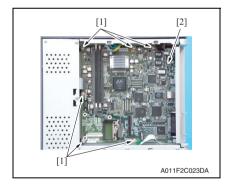
See P.44

- 2. Loosen seven screws [1], and remove the print control board protective shield [2].
- *3.* Remove the print control board fan motor.

See P.65



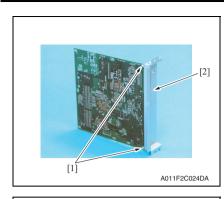


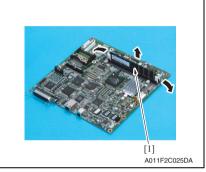


- 4. Remove the left cover.
- See P.43
- 5. Remove seven screws [1].

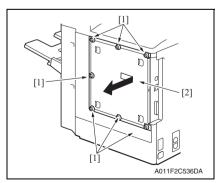
- 6. Disconnect the three connectors [1] on the print control board.
- 7. Disconnect the two flat cables [2] from the print control board.

8. Remove six screws [1], and remove the print control board assy [2].





6.3.13 MFP board (MFPB)



9. Remove two screws [1] and the interface protective cover [2].

- 10. Remove the memory [1] from the print control board.
- 11. Remove the backup battery from the print control board.

See P.66

NOTE

• When the print control board is replaced, upgrade the firmware to the latest version.

See P.25

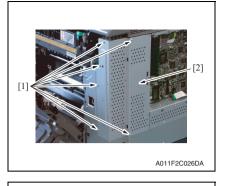
NOTE

- After the replacement of the print control board, you need to rewrite new security data into the hard disk and the compact flash if you would like to continue to use the data that has been stored in these disks.
 See P.172

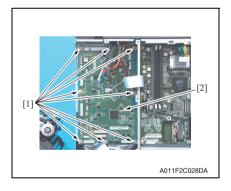
1. Remove the rear cover.

- See P.44
- 2. Remove the rear right cover. See P.45
- 3. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the print control board protective shield [2].

magicolor 5550/5570







4. Remove six screws [1] and the MFP board protective shield [2].

5. Disconnect all connectors and flat cables from the MFP board [1].

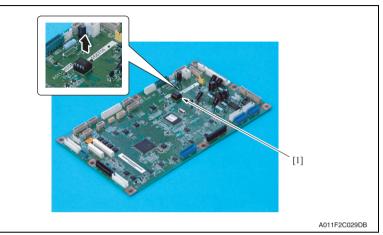
6. Remove eight screws [1], and remove the MFP board [2].

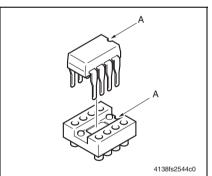
6. Other

7. Remove parameter chip (IC4) [1] from the MFP board.

NOTE

• When the MFP board (MFPB) has been replaced, be sure to remount parameter chip (IC4). Unmount parameter chip (IC4) from the old MFP board and mount it on the new MFP board.

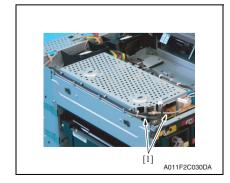




NOTE

• When mounting parameter chip (IC4), make sure the notches ("A") are precisely lined up.

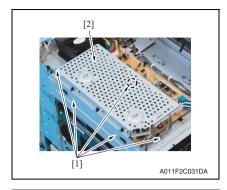
6.3.14 DC power supply (DCPU)



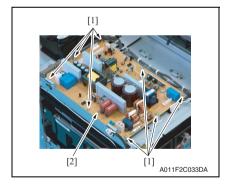
- 1. Remove the left cover.
- See P.43
- *2.* Remove the operation board. See P.47
- *3.* Remove the upper front cover. See P.42
- 4. Remove the exit tray.

See P.44

5. Remove two cables [1] of the operation board.







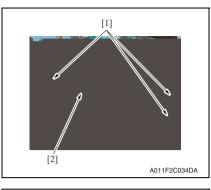
6. Remove five screws [1] and the DC power supply protective cover [2].

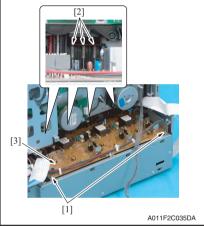
7. Disconnect all connectors from the DC power supply.

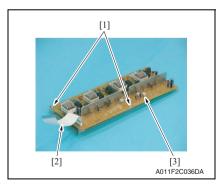
8. Remove eight screws [1] and the DC power supply [2].

6. Other

6.3.15 High voltage unit /1 (HV1)







1. Remove PWB box /1.

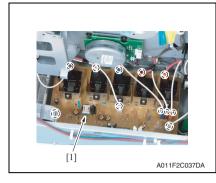
See P.66

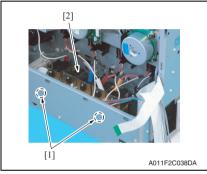
2. Remove three screws [1], and remove the harness plate [2].

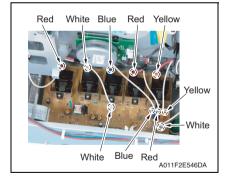
 Remove two screws [1], 12 springs [2], and the high voltage unit /1 assy [3].

 Remove two screws [1], the flat cable [2], and remove the high voltage unit /1 [3].

6.3.16 High voltage unit /2 (HV2)







- 1. Remove the high voltage unit /1. See P.54
- 2. Disconnect all connectors and flat cables from high voltage unit /2 [1].

3. Remove two screws [1], and remove the high voltage unit /2 [2].

magicolor 5550/5570

NOTE

 When reinstalling high voltage unit / 2, make sure that each color connector is in the correct position, as shown in the illustration on the left.

magicolor 5550/5570

6.3.17 Toner level sensor board (TLSB)

- 1. Open the Front Door.
- 2. Remove the toner cartridge (C,M,Y,K).
- See P.13
- *3.* Remove the print unit (C,M,Y,K). See P.15

NOTE

- After the print unit has been removed from the main body, be sure to place it in the
 plastic bag (black) or wrap it in a light shielding cloth, and store it in a dark place.
 Do not leave the Print unit exposed to light for a extended period of time, as it may
 become damaged.
- 4. Remove the waste toner bottle.

See P.19

5. Remove the upper front cover. See P.42

6. Remove the right front cover.

See P.43

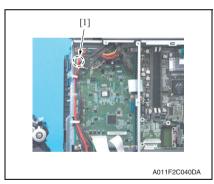
7. Remove the operation board.

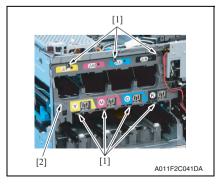
See P.47

8. Remove the exit tray.

See P.44

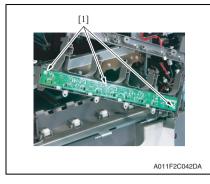
9. Remove the MFP board protective shield. See the steps 1 to 4 on P.50 "Mechanical Control Board".

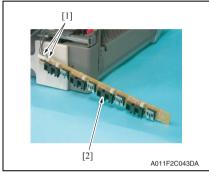




10. Disconnect the connector (PJ13A) [1] from the MFP board.

 Remove seven screws [1], and remove the toner level sensor board assy [2].





12. Remove three screws [1].

 Disconnect two connectors [1] and remove the toner level sensor board [2].

6. Other

magicolor 5550/5570

6.3.18 PH Unit

- A. Removal procedure
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the toner cartridge (C,M,Y,K).

See P.13

3. Remove the print unit (C,M,Y,K).

See P.15

NOTE

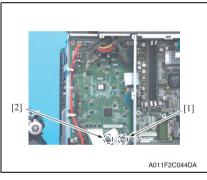
- After the print unit has been removed from the main body, be sure to place it in the plastic bag (black) or wrap it in a light shielding cloth, and store it in a dark place. Do not leave the Print unit exposed to light for a extended period of time, as it may become damaged.
- 4. Remove the waste toner bottle.

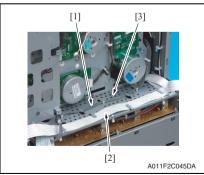
See P.19

5. Remove the transfer belt.

See P.21

6. Remove the left cover and rear cover. See P.43





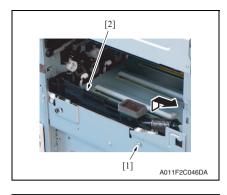
7. Remove PWB box /1.

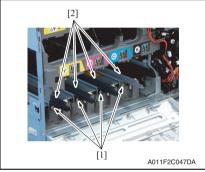
See P.66

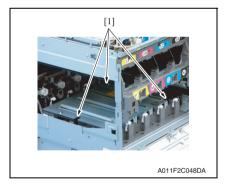
 Disconnect the connector (PJ22A) [1] and the flat cable (PJ23A) [2] from the MFP board.

 Disconnect the harness [1] and the flat cable [2] from the harness plate [3].

Maintenance







 Remove the screw [1], and remove the drawing up transportation assy [2].

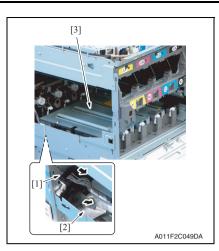
NOTE

- Waste toner may spill out from the waste toner inlet of the drawing up transportation assy.
 Take care not to tilt the waste toner inlet when removing the drawing up transportation assy. The drawing up transportation assy also needs to be placed in a horizontal position where no waste toner will spill out.
- 11. Remove four screws [1], and remove corresponding four print unit rails [2].

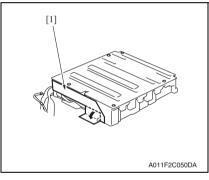
12. Remove three shoulder screws [1] of

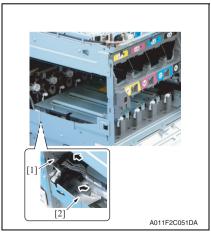
the PH unit.

6. Other



B. Reinstallation procedure



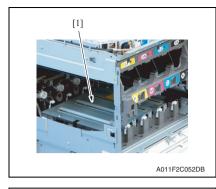


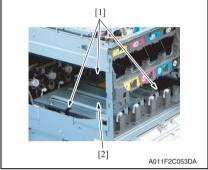
13. Pull the connector [1] and the flat cable [2] out and then remove the PH unit [3].

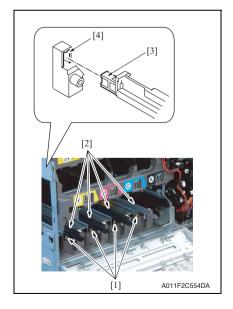
Field Service Ver. 1.0 Nov. 2006

- 1. Remove the shipping tape affixed on the new PH unit shield sheet.
- 2. Unfold the rectangular area of the shield sheet so that the part is lying flat.

3. Insert the PH unit connector [1] and flat cable [2] from the positions shown in the left illustration. Then route them to the rear direction.







4. Install the PH unit [1] into the main body.

NOTE

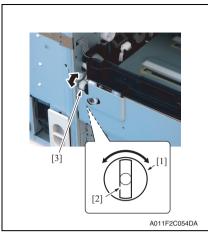
- After the PH unit installation, check that the shield sheet is grounded properly onto the base of the PH unit.
- Make sure that the shield sheet does not have any unnecessary crease, positional misalignment nor loose attachment.
- 5. Fix the PH unit [2] with three shoulder screws [1].

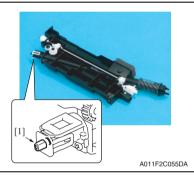
6. Attach the four print unit rails [2] with one screw [1] for each rail.

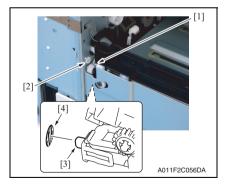
NOTE

• Make sure that the convex parts [3] at rear end of the rail are fit in the locating hole [4] on the main body.

6. Other





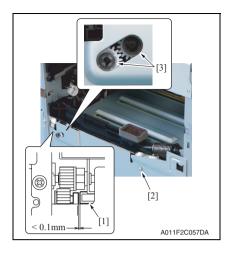


- 7. Install the drawing up transportation assy into the main body.
- <1> Turn the middle drive gear [3] so that the rear gear [1] keeps its own rectangular slot vertically long.

<2> Turn the connecting part [1] so that it becomes vertically long.

- <3> Insert the drawing up transportation assy shaft [1] into the rear mounting hole [2].
- <4> Insert the connecting part [3] of the drawing up transportation assy into the rear gear slot [4].

magicolor 5550/5570



 While pushing the positioning protrusion [1] of the drawing up transportation assy against the housing, fix the assy with one screw [2].

NOTE

- Check that the two drive gears [3] of the drawing up transportation assy are engaged.
- Use a 0.1 mm piece of a thickness gauge to check the gap between the positioning protrusion [1] and the main body frame. Make sure that the piece of the thickness gauge cannot pass through the gap. (A transparency can replace the thickness gauge.)
- Check that the shield sheet which confirmed in step 4, is well grounded onto PH unit base plate at malt of drawing up transportation assy.
- *9.* To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

6. Other

6. Other

6.3.19 Driving unit

1. Remove the PWB box /1. See P.66

2. Remove the PWB box /2.

See P.67

3. Remove the high voltage unit /1.

See P.54

4. Remove the color PC drum motor.

See P.68

5. Remove the developping motor /K.

See P.68

6. Remove the fusing motor.

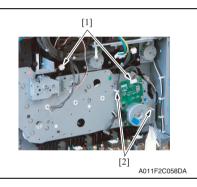
See P.69

7. Remove the intermediate transport motor.

See P.69

8. Remove the media feed and transport assy.

See the steps 1 to 6 on P.74 "Media feed clutch /1".



[1]

- 9. Disconnect the connector [1].
- 10. Remove the harness from two wire saddles [2].

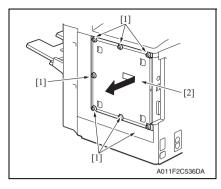
11. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the driving assy [2].

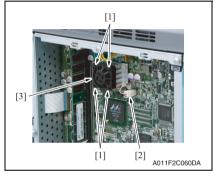
NOTE

- When installing the driving unit assy, take care not to damage or soil the gears.
- 12. Remove the pressure/retraction clutch /1 assy.

See the steps 3 on P.73 "Pressure/ retraction clutch /1".

6.3.20 Print control board fan motor (FM5)





1. Remove the rear cover See P.44

2. Remove the rear right cover. See P.45

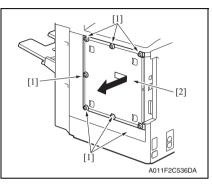
3. Remove seven screws [1], and remove the print control board protective shield [2].

 Remove four screws [1], connector [2], and remove the print control board fan motor [3]. magicolor 5550/5570

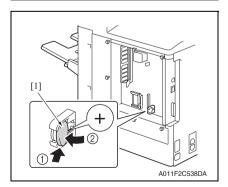
6.3.21 Backup Battery

NOTE

- This printer uses a lithium battery to backup memory. Replace the battery with our specified memory backup battery (CR2032). Use of a different battery or the one not equal to our specified battery may present risk of explosion.
- Before your backup battery replacement, refer to the section of Removal of PWBs on P.39.
- When working with printed boards, hold the boards only by the edges.



LI 1 2 AUTIF2C537DA



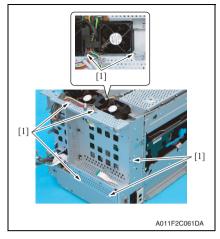
6.3.22 PWB box /1

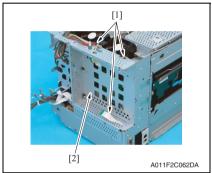
- 1. Remove the rear cover. See P.44
- 2. Loosen seven screws [1], and remove the print control board protective shield [2].

3. Press the backup battery [1] in the way shown in the picture on the left and remove it from the housing.

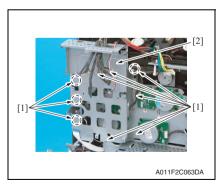
4. Insert a new backup battery [1]. **NOTE**

When inserting the new backup battery, be sure that the + side faces toward the right.





6.3.23 PWB box /2



- 1. Remove the print control board. See P.48
- 2. Remove the MFP board. See P.50
- 3. Remove the exit tray.

See P.44

4. Remove seven screws [1].

5. Remove the harness [1], and remove the PWB box /1 [2].

magicolor 5550/5570

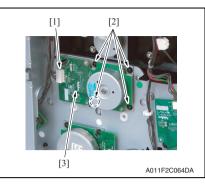
1. Remove the print control board. See P.48

2. Remove the MFP board.

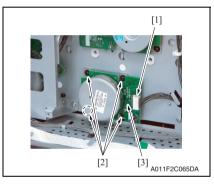
See P.50

- *3.* Remove the PWB box /1. See P.66
- 4. Remove nine screws [1], and remove the PWB box /2 [2].

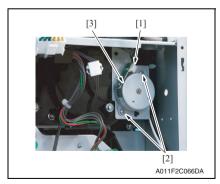
6.3.24 Color PC drum motor (M2)



6.3.25 Developing motor /K (M5)



6.3.26 Toner supply motor /Y, M (M6)



1. Remove the PWB box /1.

See P.66

2. Disconnect the connector [1], and remove three screws [2] and the color PC drum motor [3].

NOTE

 When installing the color PC drum motor, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.

- 1. Remove the PWB box /1. See P.66
- Disconnect the connector [1], and remove four screws [2] and the developing motor /K [3].

NOTE

- When installing the developing motor /K, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.
- 1. Remove the PWB box /1.

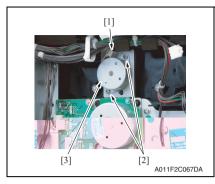
See P.66

 Disconnect the connector [1], and remove two screws [2] and the toner supply motor /Y, M [3].

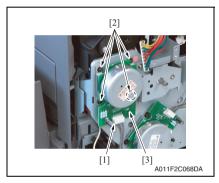
NOTE

• When installing the toner supply motor /Y, M, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.

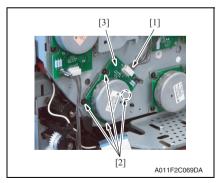
6.3.27 Toner supply motor /C, K (M7)



6.3.28 Fusing motor (M4)



6.3.29 Intermediate transport motor (M3)



1. Remove the PWB box /1.

See P.66

 Disconnect the connector [1], and remove two screws [2] and the toner supply motor /C, K [3].

NOTE

- When installing the toner supply motor /C, K, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.
- 1. Remove the PWB box /1. See P.66
- 2. Remove the PWB box /2. See P.67
- Disconnect the connector [1], and remove four screws [2] and the fusing motor [3].

NOTE

- When installing the fusing motor, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.
- 1. Remove the PWB box /1.

See P.66

2. Remove the PWB box /2.

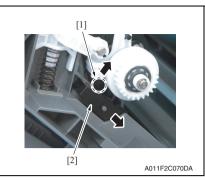
See P.67

 Disconnect the connector [1], and remove four screws [2] and the intermediate transport motor [3].

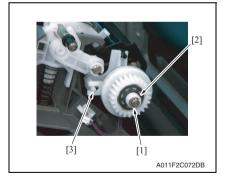
NOTE

• When installing the intermediate transport motor, try to insert it straight, and take care not to damage the gears.

6.3.30 Registration roller clutch (CL2)







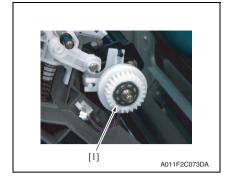
- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Unhook the tab [1], and remove the connector cover [2].

3. Disconnect the connector [1].

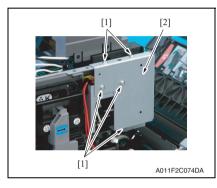
4. Remove the E-ring [1] and the bearing [2].

Precautions for Reinstallation

• When reinstalling the bearing, make sure that the notch [3] on the registration roller clutch comes to the position shown in the left picture.

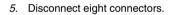


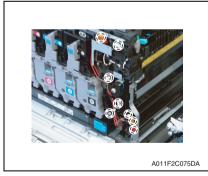
6.3.31 Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5)

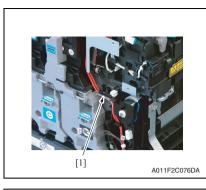


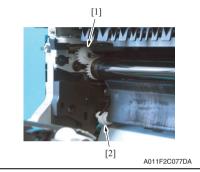
5. Remove the registration roller clutch [1].

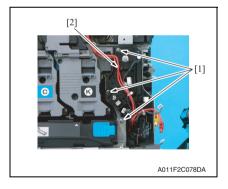
- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove the right front cover. See P.43
- 3. Open the right door.
- 4. Remove five screws [1], and remove the connector cover [2].







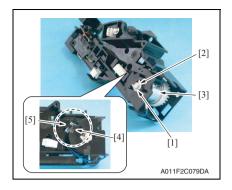




6. Remove the door sensor /Fr (PS14) [1].

 Remove the gear /1 [1] and the gear /2 [2].

 Remove three screws [1], and remove the 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction drive assy [2].

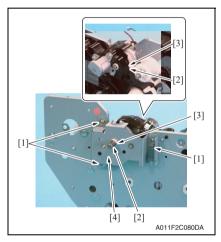


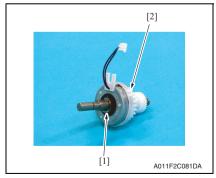
 Snap off the C-clip [1], and remove the bearing [2] and the pressure/ retraction clutch /2 [3].

NOTE

• When reinstalling the bearing and pressure/retraction clutch /2, make sure that the protrusion [4] on the pressure/retraction clutch /2 fits into the locking slot [5].

6.3.32 Pressure/retraction clutch /1 (CL4)



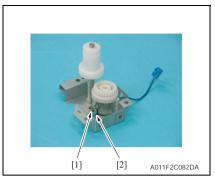


1. Remove the driving unit assy.

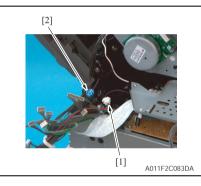
See P.64

- 2. Remove three screws [1].
- Snap off two E-rings [2], and remove two bearings [3] and the pressure/ retraction clutch /1 assy [4].

4. Remove the gear [1], and remove the pressure/retraction clutch /1 [2].



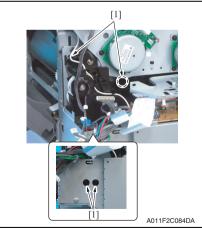
6.3.33 Media feed clutch /1 (CL1)



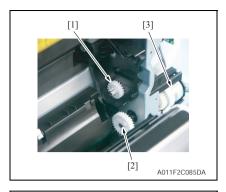
NOTE

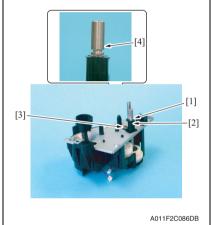
• When reinstalling the bearing and pressure/retraction clutch /1, make sure that the protrusion [1] on the pressure/retraction clutch /1 fits into the locking slot [2].

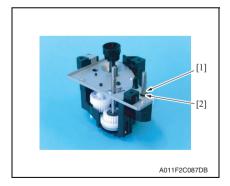
- 1. Remove the PWB box /1.
- See P.66
- 2. Remove the PWB box /2. See P.67
- 3. Disconnect the white connector [1] and the blue connector [2].



4. Remove four screws [1].







5. Remove the gear [1] and the gear [2].

NOTE

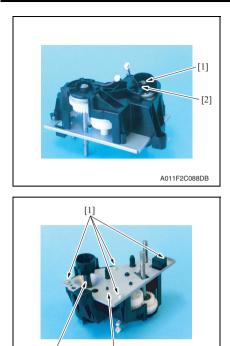
- When the Media feed clutch /1 is reinstalled, replace the gears that have been removed, as these gears could have been damaged.
- 6. Remove the media feed and transport assy [3].
- 7. Snap off the E-ring [1] and remove the bearing [2] and spring [3].

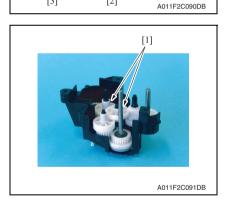
NOTE

• Fit the E-ring to the lower groove [4] of the two grooves in the shaft.

8. Snap off the E-ring [1] and remove the bearing [2].

6. Other





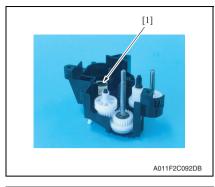
[2]

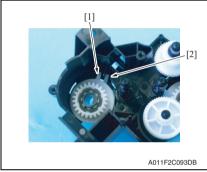
[3]

9. Snap off the E-ring [1] and remove the bearing [2].

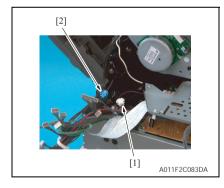
10. Remove four screws [1], and remove the media feed and transport assy holding metal plate [2] and the shaft [3].

11. Remove two gears [1].





6.3.34 Media feed clutch /2 (CL3)



1. Remove the PWB box /1. See P.66

NOTE

- 2. Remove the PWB box /2. See P.67
- 3. Disconnect the white connector [1] and the blue connector [2].

12. Remove the Media feed clutch /1 [1].

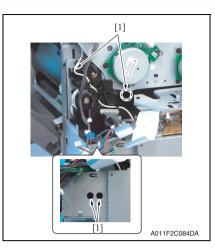
 When reinstalling the media feed clutch /1, make sure that the protrusion [1] on the media feed clutch

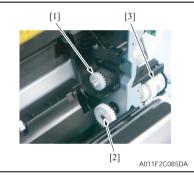
clutch through the location shown

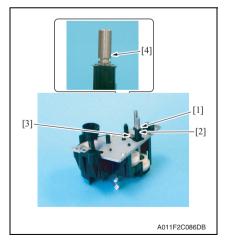
fits into the locking slot [2]. • Pass the harness of the media feed

in the picture on the left.

6. Other







4. Remove four screws [2].

Field Service Ver. 1.0 Nov. 2006

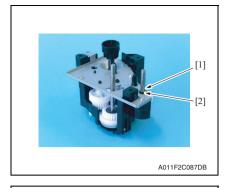
5. Remove the gear [1] and the gear [2].

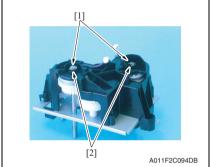
NOTE

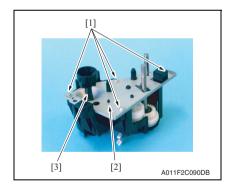
- When the media feed clutch /2 is reinstalled, replace the gears that have been removed, as these gears could have been damaged.
- 6. Remove the media feed and transport assy [3].
- 7. Snap off the E-ring [1] and remove the bearing [2] and spring [3].

NOTE

• When reinstalling the E-ring, fit it to the lower groove [4] of the two grooves in the shaft.



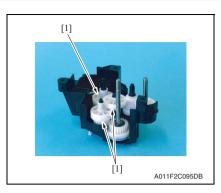


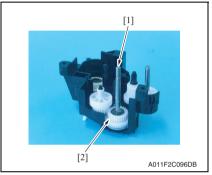


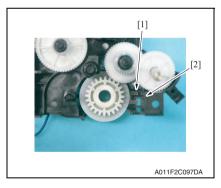
8. Snap off the E-ring [1] and remove the bearing [2].

9. Snap off two E-rings [1] and remove two bearings [2].

 Remove four screws [1], and remove the media feed and transport assy holding metal plate [2] and the shaft [3]. Maintenance







11. Remove three gears [1].

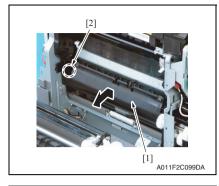
Field Service Ver. 1.0 Nov. 2006

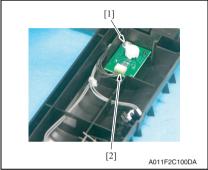
12. Remove the shaft [1] and the media feed clutch /2 [1].

NOTE

• When reinstalling the shaft and the media feed clutch /2, make sure that the protrusion [1] on the media feed clutch /2 fits into the locking slot [2].

6.3.35 Temperature/ humidity sensor (TEM/HUMS)

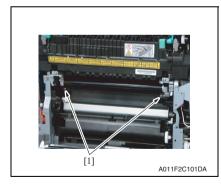




- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Remove the screw [2] from the sensor holder [1].
- *3.* Remove the sensor holder [1] by sliding it to the front.

4. Remove the screw [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the temperature/humidity sensor.

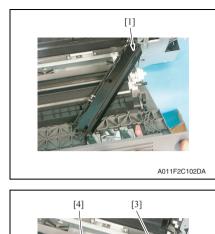
6.3.36 IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr (IDCSB/R, IDCSB/L)

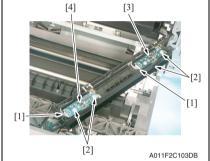


1. Open the right door.

2. Remove the transfer belt. See P.21

3. Remove two screws [1].





4. Unhook the spring and remove the cover [1].

NOTE

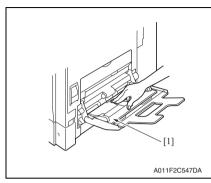
• Be careful not to lose the spring.

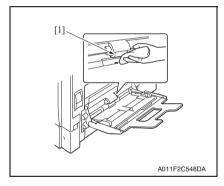
 Disconnect one connector [1] each and remove two screws [2] each, and remove the IDC sensor board / Fr [3] and IDC sensor board /Re [4].

NOTE

The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

6.4.1 Tray 1 feed roller



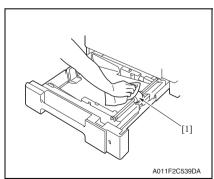


- 1. Open the tray 1.
- Press down on the center of the media lifting plate [1] until the left and right locking tabs lock into place.

3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the feed roller [1] clean of dirt.

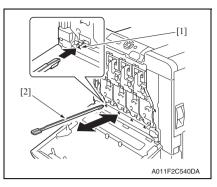
- 1. Slide out tray 2.
- 2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the feed roller [1] clean of dirt.

6.4.2 Tray 2 feed roller



6. Other

6.4.3 Laser irradiation section



- 1. Open the front door.
- Align the edge of the laser lens cleaning tool [2] with the marker [1] (at four places) of the waste toner bottle. Insert the tool [2] and make two to three reciprocating motions to clean the laser irradiation section.

NOTE

• For cleaning, do not use any tool other than the specified laser lens cleaning tool.

Adjustment/Setting

7. How to use the adjustment section

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

A. Advance checks

- Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:
- 1. The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- 2. The power supply is properly grounded.
- 3. The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- 4. The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- 5. The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- 6. The density is properly selected.
- 7. Correct media is being used for printing.
- 8. The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- 9. Toner is not running out.

B. Precautions for service jobs

- 1. To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.
- 2. Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.
- 3. The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.
- 4. Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.
- 5. Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.

8. Description of the control panel

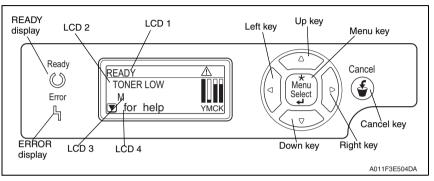
8.1 Control panel display

8.1.1 Parts of the control panel display

• The following shows the names of each part of the control panel. These names are used throughout this manual.

From the top, the panel is divided into LCD 1, LCD 2, LCD 3, and LCD 4.

• LCD 4 may display a message instructing you to press a key on the control panel. When you press that key, the displayed message changes.



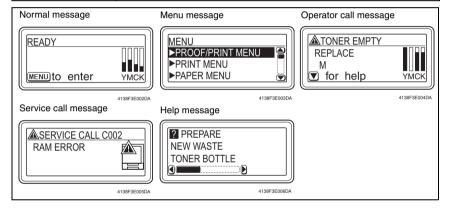
NOTE

• The display screen is not designed for touch panel operation; therefore, do not touch the icons on the screen. If it is pushed too hard, the LCD (liquid crystal display) may be damaged.

8.1.2 Message structure

• There are five types of messages.

Message	Description
Normal messages	These messages are displayed after warmup has been completed: • Toner remaining gauge • Data-receiving message • Printing message • Firmware update messages • Warnings
Menu messages	These messages are displayed after the MENU key is pressed.
Operator call messages	These messages are displayed when minor error(s) that can be handled by users occur.
Service call messages	These messages are displayed when error(s) that cannot be handled by users occur.
Help messages	These messages are displayed when the Down key $ abla$ is pressed when a Normal message/Warning or Operator Call message is displayed.

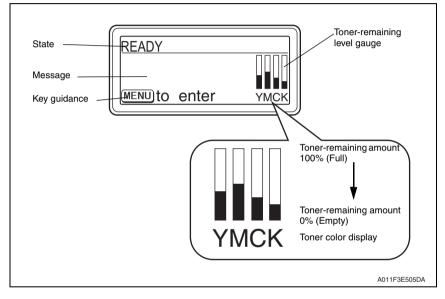


8.1.3 Normal messages

- The basic screen is displayed after warmup has been completed.
- The "READY LEDO" lights up while the message is displayed.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	Printer mode is displayed. (Normally, "READY" is displayed.)	
LCD 2	The message is displayed. (Normally, no message is displayed.)	
LCD 3	The message is displayed. (Normally, no message is displayed.)	
LCD 4	 Key guidance is displayed. Normally "MENU to enter" is displayed. When the MENU key is pressed, the panel displays the MENU screen. When a WARNING message is displayed, "∇ for help" is also displayed. 	

When the Down key ∇ is pressed, the panel displays the HELP screen.



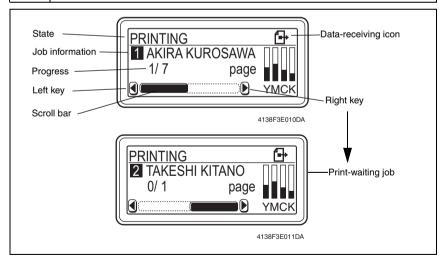
A. Toner-remaining level gauge

- The amount of each color of toner remaining is graphed in 10% increments (11 scales.) However, it's not displayed during the following states:
 - Operator Call
 - Service Call
 - Menu
 - Help menu
 - BOOT message
 - When the toner remaining amount is not determined immediately after startup.
 - When using toner made by companies other than Konica Minolta

B. Data receiving message/print

• The control panel displays the following description at data receiving message/print.

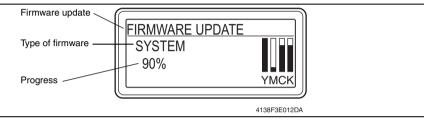
Display	Description
	 Printer mode is displayed (for example, PRINTING). PROCESSING is displayed during data receiving or printer startup. PRINTING is displayed during printing. When printing in sets, [COPYING] is displayed after the second set starts printing.
LCD 1	 The normal printing data-receiving icon "⊕" is displayed on the right during data receiving. The Camera-Direct connecting icon "☺" is displayed on the right when the digital camera is connected to the machine. The Camera-Direct printing data-receiving icon " ✓ " is displayed on the right during data receiving.
LCD 2	 Job information is displayed (for example, 1 AKIRA KUROSAWA). The job owner name, etc. set with PJL commands is displayed. When multiple jobs are set, the number is displayed to the left of the owner name.
LCD 3	 Job progress is displayed (for example, 1/7 page). In normal print mode, "Number of processed print / Total number of print" is displayed. When printing in sets, "Number of processed print/Total number of a set print" is displayed while the first set is copying. After the second set starts printing, the LCD 1 state is changed to COPYING and "Number of processed print /Total number of print" is displayed.
LCD 4	 Scroll bar is displayed. When multiple jobs are sent, a scroll bar is displayed. By pressing the left key⊲/right key⊳, the jobs waiting to be printed are displayed. The following example shows the scroll bar in the case of two jobs. By pressing the right key, the panel displays the job waiting to be printed. To return to the display of the job currently processing, press the left key.



C. Firmware update

• The control panel displays the following description at firmware update.

Display	Description
LCD 1	FIRMWARE UPDATE is displayed.
LCD 2	LCD 2 displays the type of firmware (for example, SYSTEM). • SYSTEM: Controller firmware • BOOT: Boot firmware • RESOURCE: Resource file • CONFIGURATION: Equipment configuration file • ENGINE: Engine firmware
LCD 3	Progress of the update is displayed (for example, 90%).
LCD 4	No display



D. Warning

• This message is displayed when the print is available but some user manipulation(s) are required. The control panel displays the following description for warning.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	Print mode is displayed and warning icon is displayed on the right (for example, READY).	
LCD 2	Warning message is displayed (for example, TONER LOW M).	
LCD 3	warning message is displayed (or example, TONETLEOW M).	
LCD 4	Key guidance is displayed (for example, \bigtriangledown for help: By pressing the down key $\bigtriangledown,$ the screen displays the help screen).	

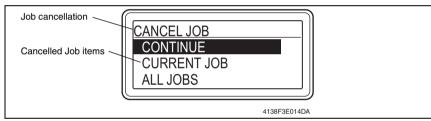
State	READY	Warning icon	
Warning message	TONER LOW		
Key guidance	▼ for help	ҮМСК	
		4138F3E013DA	

E. Job cancellation

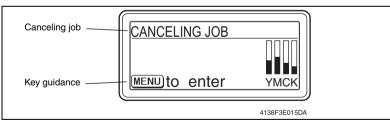
- By pressing the Cancel key after the job is sent, the control panel displays the job cancel menu.
- When no job is has been sent, pressing the Cancel key has no effect.
- The control panel displays the following description at the job cancel menu.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	CANCEL JOB is displayed.	
LCD 2	CONTINUE is displayed. Function: Continue the print of currently processing job. 	
LCD 3	CURRENT JOB is displayed. Function: Stop the print of currently processing job. 	
LCD 4	 ALL JOBS is displayed Stop the printing of all jobs, including the job currently being processed and all jobs waiting to be printed. 	

- By pressing the up key∆/down key ∇, the item can be selected.
- The selected item is displayed with highlighted text. The default setting is CONTINUE.
- By pressing the MENU key, the selected item is entered.
- By pressing the Cancel key, the job cancel menu is closed.



• By selecting CURRENT JOB or ALL JOB and pressing the MENU key, job cancellation is implemented.



F. Menu

- The menu is displayed when the MENU key is pressed.
- The control panel displays the following description at the menu screen.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	A Warning icon is displayed.	
LCD 2	 Menu items are displayed (3 items/ 7 items). By pressing the up key∆/down key∇, the item is selected. The menu consists of the following 8 items: 	
LCD 3	- PROOF/ PRINT MENU - PRINT MENU - PAPER MENU - QUALITY MENU	
LCD 4	- MEMORY DIRECT - CAMERA DIRECT	
Menu Up key MENU PROOF/PRINT MENU PRINT MENU PAPER MENU Down key		
4138F3E003DA		

• For the details of each item, see "Menu."

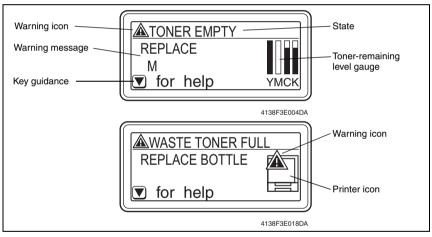
See P.104

8.1.4 Operator call messages

- These messages are displayed when minor error(s) that can be handled by user occur.
- The "Error LED 4" lights while the message is displayed on the control panel.
- The "Ready LEDO" on control panel turns OFF during operator call.
- The control panel displays the following when an operator call message is displayed.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	A warning icon " 🏝 " is displayed and the state is displayed on the right (for example, TONER EMPTY).	
LCD 2	Message is displayed (for example, REPLACE M).	
LCD 3	- Message is displayed (for example, HEFLACE M).	
LCD 4	"▽ for help" is displayed. • By pressing the down key, the panel displays the Help screen.	

- In the case of an operator call message related to a toner cartridge, the toner-remaining level gauge is displayed, and the gauge of the appropriate color flashes (for example, the M gauge).



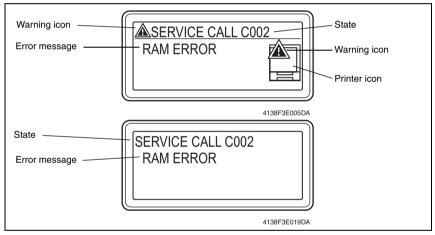
• For the details of each item, see "Operator call messages." See P.98

8.1.5 Service call messages

- These messages are displayed when error(s) that cannot be handled by the user occur.
- The "Error LED 4" turns ON while the message is displayed on the control panel.
- The "Ready LED O" on control panel turns OFF while an service call message is displayed on the control panel.
- The control panel displays the following description at service call.

Display	Description	
LCD 1	A "Warning icon 🇥 " is displayed and the service call message and a 4-digit-service call ID are displayed on the right (for example, SERVICE CALL C002).	
LCD 2	The error description is displayed (for example, RAM ERROR).	
LCD 3	The end description is displayed (ior example, nAin Ennon).	
LCD 4	No display	

- A printer icon is displayed with a flashing "warning icon \triangle ."
- A service call detected during startup of the printer is displayed as shown in the bottom of the following picture.



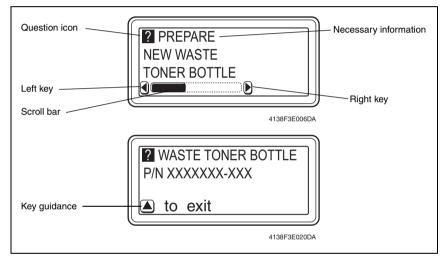
• For the details of each item, see "Service call messages."

8.1.6 Help screen

- This screen is displayed when the down key ∇ is pressed when a normal message/ warning or operator call message is displayed.
- The control panel displays the following description at the help screen.

Display	Description	
LCD 1		
LCD 2	A "Question icon ?" is displayed and the necessary information is displayed on the right (for example, PREPARE NEW WASTE TONER BOTTLE).	
LCD 3	example, the file new whole foreit bottle).	
LCD 4	 A scroll bar or "△ to exit" message is displayed. If there are several messages, a scroll bar is displayed. By pressing the left key⊲/right key⊳, a previous/next screen message is displayed. If all messages are displayed, "△ to exit" displays on the screen. 	

• A graphic is displayed if necessary.



8.2 List of control panel messages

NOTE

- When two or more messages are to be displayed, the message with the higher priority will be displayed.
- When a message concerning consumables/periodic replacement parts (units) is displayed, print a statistics page from the [PRINT MENU] \rightarrow [STATISTICS] menu and check the status of the other consumables, too.

See P.109

8.2.1 Normal messages

A. Normal messages

Message (LCD1)	Description
INITIALIZING	The printer is being initialized
READY	Print enabled (Data not being printed)
OFFLINE	Off line condition (Data reception not available) TELNET allows offline setting.
ENERGY SAVER	Machine in energy saver mode
PROCESSING	Print data processing (Data receiving - printer is started)
PRINTING	Data being printed (Printer is started)
COPYING	Data being printed in sets
WARMING UP	During warmup
CALIBRATING	Color shift correction in progress
CANCELING JOB	Job canceled
REBOOTING	The printer is restarting
FIRMWARE UPDATE	The printer's firmware is being upgraded

B. Warning messages

Priority	Message (LCD2/LCD3)	Description
High 1	UNABLE TO COLLATE JOB	Print in sets disabled (full hard disk) (This warning message is displayed during printing.)
2	UNABLE TO STAPLE JOB *1	When a job with stapling is printing, the number of printed pages already exceeds the number of pages that can be stapled. (This warning message is displayed during printing.)
3	HDD NEAR FULL	The hard disk space will run out soon.
4	MEMORY CARD NEAR FULL	The compact flash space will run out soon.
5	I-UNIT END X	 Service life of the print unit (X) has been reached. (END status) Executing the printing with one of YMCK being at the END will make the operator call.
6	I-UNIT LIFE X	Service life of the print unit has been reached. Printing can be continued, but print quality is out of guarantee.)
7	TONER EMPTY X	The specified color toner cartridge is empty.
8	TRANS. BELT END OF LIFE	Transfer belt unit service life has been reached.
9	TRANS.ROLLER END OF LIFE	Transfer roller service life has been reached.
10	FUSER UNIT END OF LIFE	Fusing unit service life has been reached.
11	STAPLER EMPTY *1	The staple finisher has run out of staples. Otherwise, the staples are almost empty.
12	WASTE TONER NEAR FULL	The waste toner bottle needs replacement soon.
13	I-UNIT LOW X	The specified color print unit will run out soon. (This message appears when SYS DEFAULT MENU/ENABLE WARN- ING/I-UNIT LOW is set to ON.)
14	TONER LOW X	The specified color toner cartridge will run out soon. (This message appears when SYS DEFAULT MENU/ENABLE WARN- ING/TONER LOW is set to ON.)
15	PAPER EMPTY TRAY X	No media in the specified Tray. The specified tray is not installed, but it is set in the printer driver.
16	INCORRECT I-UNIT X	The specified color print unit is not the correct type. A print cycle can be initiated, but is run at 1/3 the normal print speed.
17	INCORRECT TONER X	The specified color toner cartridge is not the correct type. A print cycle can be initiated, but is run at 1/3 the normal print speed.
18	NON SUPPORT CARD	A compact flash card which is inserted is not supported. The compact flash card will be invalid.
19	INCORRECT HDD	A hard disk which was formatted by other unit is installed.
Low 20	INCORRECT MEMORY CARD	A compact flash card which was formatted by other unit is installed.

*1: Only when the optional staple finisher is mounted.

8.2.2 Operator call messages

Priority	Mess	age	Description		
FIIOTILY	LCD1 LCD2/LCD3		Description		
High 1	CONFIGURA- TION ERR	TURN OFF THEN ON	 Device configuration was changed while the main switch was ON. In this condition, key operation on the control panel is disabled. To make the machine recover from the condition, turn the power switch OFF and ON. 		
		FRONT COVER	The front door of the machine is open.		
		SIDE COVER	The right door of the machine is open.		
		DUPLEX COVER	The duplex option door is open.		
		TRAY3 COVER	The right cover of tray 3 is open.		
2	COVER OPEN	TRAY4 COVER	The right cover of tray 4 is open.		
		FINISHER COVER *1	The finisher cover is open.		
		UPPER COVER *1	The finisher upper cover is open.		
		STAPLER COVER *1	The finisher stapler cover is open.		
3	INCORRECT TONER	INCORRECT TONER DETECTED	 The printer detects a toner manufactured by Konica Minolta but not the type specified for the model. By pressing the right key, different messages appear one after another. (During the display of the messages, key operations other than the right key are disabled.) In the last message screen, the machine can recover from the error by pressing the Menu Select key. How- ever, the same message appears when the power switch is turned OFF and ON, the printer is being rebooted, or the printer covers are being opened or closed. 		
	PAPER JAM	STAPLER *1	A media jam has occurred at the staple section of the optional staple finisher.		
		MAIN EXIT *1	A media jam has occurred at the main tray of the optional staple finisher.		
		SUB EXIT *1	A media jam has occurred at the sub tray of the optional staple finisher.		
		FINISHER *1	A media jam has occurred at the optional staple finisher.		
4		UPPER TRANS *1	A media jam has occurred at the upper transport section of the optional staple finisher.		
		FUSER/EXIT	A media jam has occurred at the fusing section.		
		SECOND TRANS	A media jam has occurred at the second transfer section.		
		VERTICAL TRANS	A media jam has occurred at the vertical transport.		
		DUPLEX1	A media jam has occurred at the duplex media feed section of the duplex option.		

Priority	Message		Description		
FIIOIIty	LCD1	LCD2/LCD3	Description		
		DUPLEX2	A media jam has occurred at the duplex transport section of the duplex option.		
		TRAY1	A media jam has occurred at tray 1 (manual feed tray).		
4	PAPER JAM	TRAY2	A media jam has occurred at tray 2.		
		TRAY3	A media jam has occurred at tray 3.		
		TRAY4	A media jam has occurred at tray 4.		
5	I-UNIT MISSING	CHECK X	The specified color print unit is not installed.		
6	TONER MISSING	CHECK X	The specified color toner cartridge is not installed.		
7	FUSER MISSING	CHECK UNIT	The fusing unit is not installed.		
8	WASTE TONER FULL	REPLACE BOTTLE	The waste toner bottle is full.		
		REPLACE Y REPLACE	The specified color print unit has reached its life.		
9	I-UNIT END	M REPLACE C	 This message will be displayed when performing the printing while warning message [I-UNIT END] is being displayed. 		
		REPLACE K			
10	TONER EMPTY	REPLACE Y REPLACE M REPLACE C REPLACE K	The specified color toner cartridge has run out.		
11	TRAYX SIZE ERR	ADD SSSS *2	The media size set in the printer driver does not match that of the media loaded in the specified tray.Load "SSSS" size media in the specified tray.		
12	TRAYX TYPE ERROR	ADD TTTT *2	The media size set in the printer driver does not match that of the media loaded in the specified tray. • Load "TTTT" type media in the specified tray.		
13	ADJUST TRAY1		Tray 1 (manual feed tray) is removed from the printer.		
14	STAPLER EMPTY	REPLACE STAPLE CARTRIDGE	The staples are empty when an attempt was made to print a staple job.		
15	MANUAL FEED	SSSS *2 TTTT *2	 During print start-up, media has been loaded in manual feed tray and is waiting for a print start command. After the user confirms the media and gives the print start command, printing starts. How to start printing: Press the up key. Press the down keys, select tray with help menu and press the MENU key. Set the media loaded in the tray 1 again. 		

8. Description of the control panel

Priority	Message		Description		
FIOIIty	LCD1	LCD2/LCD3	Description		
16	PAPER EMPTY	SSSS *2 TTTT *2	 No specified media in trays 1 to 4. Tray 3/4 is loaded with the specified media but is not set appropriately. Displays when [TRAY CHAINING] is set to [ON]. 		
	TRAYX EMPTY	SSSS *2 TTTT *2	 No specified media in the specified tray or tray 3/4 is not set appropriately. Displays when [TRAY CHAINING] is set to [OFF]. 		
17	PAPER ERROR	SSSS *2 TTTT *2	 The size and type of media specified in the driver is not loaded in any tray. A different size of media from the one specified in the driver is loaded in the tray at media feeding. Displays when [TRAY CHAINING] is set to [ON]. 		
17	TRAYX PAPER ERR	SSSS *2 TTTT *2	 The size and type of media specified in the driver is not loaded in the specified tray. A different size of media from the one specified in the driver is loaded in the specified tray at media feeding. Displays when [TRAY CHAINING] is set to [OFF]. 		
	OUTPUT FULL	REMOVE PAPER	The printed media volume has reached maximum capacity in the exit tray of the main body.		
18		REMOVE PAPER (SUB TRAY) *1	The printed media volume has reached maximum capacity in the sub tray of the staple finisher.		
		PAPER	REMOVE PAPER (MAIN TRAY) *1	The printed media volume has reached maximum capacity in the main tray of the staple finisher.	
19	MEMORY FULL PRESS CANCEL		The volume of data to be printed exceeds the permissi- ble amount of data to be processed by the machine's memory.		
20	HOLD JOB	UNABLE TO STORE JOB	The specified data of the held job is being received, but an optional HDD is not installed.		
Low 21	ERROR	XXXX PRESS CAN- CEL	When printing a stored job, the printer configuration was changed since the job was stored.		

*1: Only when the optional staple finisher is mounted.*2: SSSS represents the media size while TTTT shows the media type.

c.

8.2.3 Service call messages

• For troubleshooting procedures, see "Troubleshooting". See P.180

LCD1 LCD2/LCD3 (Service Call ID) (Error description) 0010 P MOTOR 1 0017 P MOTOR 2	Color PC drum motor malfunction	
0010 P MOTOR 1	Color PC drum motor malfunction	
0017 P MOTOR 2	Intermediate transport motor molfunction	
0018 D MOTOR 2	Developing motor/K malfunction	
001B D MOTOR 1	Developing motor/Y,M,C malfunction	
0046 FUSER FAN	Fusing fan motor malfunction	
004C OZONE FAN	Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction	
004E POWER FAN	DC power supply fan motor malfunction	
0060 FUSER MOTOR	Fusing motor malfunction	
0094 XFER DETACH2	2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure	
0096 XFER DETACH1	1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure	
0300 POLYGON MOTOF	Polygon motor malfunction	
0310 LASER ERROR	Laser malfunction	
0500 FUSER ERROR	Heating roller warm-up failure	
0501 FUSER ERROR	Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure	
0510 FUSER ERROR	Abnormally low heating roller temperature	
0511 FUSER ERROR	Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature	
0520 FUSER ERROR	Abnormally high heating roller temperature	
0521 FUSER ERROR	Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature	
0B30 FINISHER ERROR	Finisher aligning plate drive malfunction	
0B47 FINISHER ERROR	Finisher media holding drive malfunction	
0B48 FINISHER ERROR	Finisher exit roller pressure/retraction malfunction	
0B4A FINISHER ERROR	Finisher aligning belt pressure/retraction malfunction	
0B4C FINISHER ERROR	Finisher media ejector motor malfunction	
0BA0 FINISHER ERROR	Finisher tray up/down motor ascent/descent drive mal- function	
0BE1 FINISHER FAN	Finisher fan motor malfunction	
0F52 TE SENSOR Y	Toner level sensor/Y malfunction	
0F53 TE SENSOR M	Toner level sensor/M malfunction	
0F54 TE SENSOR C	Toner level sensor/C malfunction	
0F55 TE SENSOR K	Toner level sensor/K malfunction	
133B FINISHER COMMUNICATION	Finisher communication error	
13C0 ENGINE H/W ERROR	MFP board malfunction	
13E2 FLASH WRITE	Flash ROM write error	
13E3 FLASH DEVICE	Flash ROM device fault	
3C00 EEPROM1	Trouble related to accurity	
3C10 EEPROM2	Trouble related to security	

Mes	sage	
LCD1 (Service Call ID)	LCD2/LCD3 (Error description)	Description
3FFB	FINISHER ROM	Finisher flash ROM error
C002,	BAM FBBOB	RAM error at startup (standard memory)
C003		RAM error at startup (expanded memory)
C013	H/W ADDRESS	MAC address error at startup (MAC address is invalid)
C015	BOOT ROM	Boot ROM error at startup
C025		Controller ROM error (Configuration information error)
C026	CONTROLLER ROM	Controller ROM error (Access error)
C027	-	Controller ROM error (Data error)
C050	HDD ERROR	HDD access error
C051	HDD DISK FULL	HDD full error *1
C052	CARD ERROR	Compact flash access error
C053	CARD FULL	Compact flash full error *1
C060	UPDATE ERROR	Firmware update error
C071	H/W CONFIGURA- TION ERROR	Hardware configuration error
FFFF	I/F COMMUNICA- TION ERROR	Interface communication error

8.3 Cancelling a print job

- A print job being processed or printed can be cancelled by pressing the Cancel key.
- When no job has been sent, pressing the Cancel key has no effect.
- 1. If the Cancel key is pressed while a print job is being printed, a message appears on the control panel.
- 2. Select the job to be cancelled using the up key $\bigtriangleup/$ down key \bigtriangledown and press the MENU SELECT key.

By pressing the Cancel key, the job cancel menu is closed.

Panel Display (LCD2-LCD4)	Description			
CONTINUE	Continue printing the currently processing job.			
CURRENT JOB	Stop printing the currently processing job.			
ALL JOB	Stop printing all jobs, including the currently processing job and all jobs waiting to be printed.			



9. Menu

9.1 List of menu functions

	Ref. page			
PROOF/PRINT M	P.108			
PRINT MENU	CONFIGURATION PG			P.108
	DEMO PAGE			P.109
	STATISTICS PAG	P.109		
	FONT LIST POSTSCRIPT			P.113
		PCL		
	MENU MAP			P.113
	DIRECTORY LIS	ST *1		P.113
PAPER MENU	PAPER	DEFAULT TRAY		P.114
	SOURCE	TRAY 1		P.114
		TRAY 2		P.116
		TRAY 3		P.116
		TRAY 4		
		TRAY CHAININ	G	P.117
		TRAY MAPPIN	G	P.117
	DUPLEX *2	P.117		
	COPIES	P.118		
	COLLATE *4	P.118		
	FINISHING *5	P.118		
	JOB SEPARATIO	P.119		
	IMAGE ROTATIO	P.119		
QUALITY MENU	COLOR MODE	P.119		
	BRIGHTNESS	P.119		
	HALFTONE	IMAGE PRINTING		P.120
		TEXT PRINTING		P.120
		GRAPHICS PR	P.120	
	EDGE	IMAGE PRINTI	NG	P.120
	ENHANCE-	TEXT PRINTIN	G	P.121
	MENT	GRAPHICS PR	INTING	P.121
	EDGE STRENG	P.121		
	ECONOMY PRI	P.121		
	GLOSSY MODE			P.122
	PCL SETTING	CONTRAST		P.122
		IMAGE PRINTING	RGB SOURCE	P.122
			RGB INTENT	P.122
			RGB GRAY	P.123

		MENU		Ref. page	
QUALITY MENU	PCL SETTING	TEXT	RGB SOURCE	P.123	
		PRINTING	RGB INTENT	P.123	
			RGB GRAY	P.123	
		GRAPHICS	RGB SOURCE	P.124	
		PRINTING	RGB INTENT	P.124	
			RGB GRAY	P.124	
	PS SETTING	IMAGE	RGB SOURCE	P.124	
		PRINTING	RGB INTENT	P.125	
			RGB GRAY	P.125	
			DESTINATION PROF	P.125	
		TEXT	RGB SOURCE	P.125	
		PRINTING	RGB INTENT	P.126	
			RGB GRAY	P.126	
			DESTINATION PROF	P.126	
		GRAPHICS	RGB SOURCE	P.126	
		PRINTING	RGB INTENT	P.127	
			RGB GRAY	P.127	
			DESTINATION PROF	P.127	
		SIMULATION	SIMULATION PROF	P.127	
			SIMULATION INTENT	P.128	
			CMYK GRAY	P.128	
	CALIBRATION	TONE CALIBRAT	P.128		
		AIDC PROCESS		P.128	
		CMYK DENSITY	CYAN	P.128	
			MAGENTA	P.129	
			YELLOW	P.129	
			BLACK	P.129	
	COLOR SEPARA	TION		P.129	
MEMORY	LIST OF FILES *	8		P.130	
DIRECT *6, 7	TYPE OF FILES			P.130	
CAMERA DIRECT	PAPER SOURCE	E		P.130	
*9	LAYOUT			P.131	
	PAPER MARGIN			P.131	
	IMAGE	BRIGHTNESS	P.131		
	QUALITY	CONTRAST	P.131		
		ECONOMY PRIN	P.132		
		GLOSSY MODE	P.132		
		RGB SOURCE	P.132		
		HGB SOUNCE	RGB INTENT		
				P.132	
				P.132 P.133	

		MENU			Ref. page		
INTERFACE	JOB TIMEOUT	P.134					
MENU	ETHERNET	TCP/IP	ENABLE		P.134		
			IP ADDRESS		P.134		
			SUBNET MASK		P.135		
			DEFAULT GATE	DEFAULT GATEWAY			
			DHCP/BOOTP		P.135		
			TELNET		P.135		
		NETWARE	ENABLE		P.136		
		APPLETALK	ENABLE		P.136		
		SPEED/DUPLE	x		P.136		
	MEMORY DIRE	CT *6			P.136		
	CAMERA DIRE	СТ			P.137		
SYS DEFAULT	LANGUAGE				P.137		
MENU	EMULATION	DEF. EMULATIC	N		P.137		
		POSTSCRIPT	WAIT TIMEOUT		P.137		
			PS ERROR PAG	E	P.138		
			PS PROTOCOL		P.138		
		PCL	CR/LF MAPPING	CR/LF MAPPING			
			LINES PER PAGE		P.138		
			FONT SOURCE		P.139		
				NUMBER	-		
				PITCH SIZE	P.139		
				POINT SIZE	-		
				SYMBOL SET	P.139		
	PAPER	DEFAULT PAPER	PAPER SIZE		P.140		
		FAFEN	CUSTOM SIZE		P.140		
		PAPER TYPE			P.140		
		UNIT OF MEAS	P.141 P.141				
		GRAYSCALE PAGE					
	STARTUP OPTIONS	DO STARTUP P	AGE		P.141		
	AUTO CONTINU	JE			P.141		
	HOLD JOB TIM	EOUT *1			P.142		
	ENERGY SAVER						
	ENERGY SAVER TIME *10						
	MENU TIMEOUT						
	LCD CONTRAST						
	SECURITY	CHANGE PASS	NGE PASSWORD		P.143		
		LOCK PANEL			P.143		
	CLOCK	DATE (xx.xx.xx)			P.144		
		TIME					
		TIME ZONE					
	HDD FORMAT						

		MENU		Ref. page
SYS DEFAULT	CARD FORMAT *11			P.145
MENU	RESTORE	RESTORE NET	RESTORE NETWORK	
	DEFAULTS	RESTORE PRIN	ITER	
		RESTORE ALLE	ENERGY	
	ENABLE	PAPER EMPTY		P.152
	WARNING	TONER LOW		P.153
		I-UNIT LOW		P.153
MAINTENANCE	PRINT MENU	EVENT LOG		P.154
MENU		HALFTONE 64		P.154
	ALIGNMENT	HALFTONE 128	P.155	
		HALFTONE 256		P.155
		GRADATION	P.155	
		TOP ADJUSTMI	P.155	
		LEFT ADJUSTMENT		P.156
		LEFT ADJ DUPLEX		P.156
		TRANSFER	SIMPLEX PASS	P.156
		POWER	DUPLEX PASS	P.157
			MANUAL DUPLEX	P.157
		IMG ADJ THICK		P.157
		IMG ADJ BLACH	<	P.158
		JPPLIES REPLACE	TRANS. BELT	P.158
			TRANS ROLLER	P.158
			FUSER UNIT	P.158

*1: It will be displayed only when an optional hard disk kit is installed.

- *2: It will be displayed only when an optional duplex option is installed.
- *3: It will not be displayed when an optional staple finisher is installed.
- *4: It will be displayed only when an optional hard disk kit or compact flash (1 GB or more) is installed.
- *5: It will be displayed only when an optional staple finisher is installed.
- *6: It will be displayed only when an optional hard disk kit or compact flash is installed.
- *7: It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "ENABLE." [INTERFACE MENU] → [MEMORY DIRECT]
- *8: It will not be displayed when the flash memory is not connected or not recognized.
- *9: It will be displayed only when the following setting is set to "ENABLE."
- [INTERFACE MENU] \rightarrow [CAMERA DIRECT]
- *10: It will be displayed when [ENERGY SAVER] is set to either of the options other than OFF.
- *11: It will be displayed only when a compact flash is installed.

9.2 PROOF/PRINT MENU

Function	Selects and prints the job held temporarily in the printer.
	 Selects and deletes the job held temporarily in the printer.
	NOTE
	This menu is available only when an optional hard disk kit is installed.
Use	• To proof one copy of a print job before printing the rest of the copies.
Setting /procedure	How to print the held job
procedure	1. Select [PROOF/PRINT MENU] and press the Menu/Select key.
	2. Select user name and press the Menu/Select key.
	3. Select desired print job and press the Menu/Select key.
l .	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.
	 If the hold job is set as secured job, enter the password with the up key∆/down key√.
	6. Set the number of copies with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key.
	 NOTE If the hold job is set as secured job, the held job cannot be printed until the correct password is entered at the printer control panel. The held job is deleted automatically after the period of time specified in the "SYSTEM DEFAULT MENU/HOLD JOB TIMEOUT" menu.
	How to delete the held job
	1. Select [PROOF/PRINT MENU] and press the Menu/Select key.
	2. Select user name and press the Menu/Select key.
	3. Select desired print job and press the Menu/Select key.
	Select [DELETE] and press the Menu/Select key.
	 If the held job is set as secured job, enter the password with the up key∆/down key√.
	6. Select [YES] and press the Menu/Select key.
	 NOTE If the hold job is set as secured job, the held job cannot be deleted until the correct password is entered.

9.3 PRINT MENU

9.3.1 CONFIGURATION PG

Function	Prints a configuration page.		
Use	To check the configuration and the setting values of the machine. The following items can be checked: PRINTER INFORMATION OPTIONS INTERFACE MENU PAPER MENU SYSTEM DEFAULT MENU QUALITY MENU CAMERA DIRECT MEMORY DIRECT		
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.		

9.3.2 DEMO PAGE

Function Use	Prints a demo page.
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

9.3.3 STATISTICS PAGE

Function	Prints a statistics page.
Use	To check consumable status and the usage of the machine. The following items can be checked:
	Supplies Status PM Parts Information Counter Information Media Information Coverage Information
	 Consumable/periodic replacement parts (units) counter information*1 *1: For details, see the following table, "How to read consumable/periodic replacement parts (units) counter information.
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

A. Supplies Status

- Display the estimated percent of life remaining in the toner cartridge and print unit. The type of the toner cartridges that are installed in the printer is also displayed (See the table below).
- Display the status of the waste toner bottle and the staple unit.

Types of toner cartridges		
Starter	 Toner cartridge included with a product shipped from the factory: 3.0 K 	
Standard	 Standard-capacity toner cartridge: 6.0 K 	
High	 High-capacity toner cartridge: 12.0 K 	

NOTE

 The percent of life remaining in the toner cartridge or print unit can be used as a guide, but may not exactly reflect the amount that has been used in the toner cartridge or print unit.

B. PM Parts Information

• Display the estimated percent of life remaining in periodic replacement parts and units such as the transfer roller, transfer belt and fusing unit.

C. Counter Information

• The total number of pages that have been printed is counted and displayed based on the description shown in the following table.

<Counter information list>

Types of count		Contents	Count timing
Total Count	Monochrome	The total number of monochrome pages ejected from the printer. Increment by one per simplex and by two per duplex	
	Full color	The total number of color pages ejected from the printer. Increment by one per simplex and by two per duplex	
Total Count (duplex)	Monochrome	 The total number of monochrome duplex sheets ejected from the printer. Increment by one per duplex (and by zero per simplex) 	When a sheet of
	Full color	The total number of color duplex sheets ejected from the printer. Increment by one per duplex (and by zero per simplex)	media is ejected properly
Total Count (Normalized)	Monochrome	The total number of monochrome pages on a A4 basis that have been ejected from the printer. Increment by 100 per A4 simplex and by 200 per A4 duplex *1	
	Full color	The total number of color pages on a A4 basis that have been ejected from the printer. Increment by 100 per A4 simplex and by 200 per A4 duplex *1	
Sheets Printed by Paper Tray		The number of sheets used for each media source. Increment by one for both simplex and duplex	
Sheets Printed by Paper Size		The number of sheets used for each media size. Increment by one for both simplex and duplex	When a sheet of media is fed
Sheets Printed by Paper Type		The number of pages used per each media type. Increment by one for both simplex and duplex	

*1: A count of 100 in the counter is converted to 1 sheet of media and display the number of decimals are discarded.

NOTE

The total counters and the print counters count at a different timing, when a sheet
of media is properly ejected and when a sheet of media is fed, respectively.
Therefore, the sum of each total counter value may not be same with the sum of
each print counter value if a sheet of media cannot be ejected due to media jam
inside the machine or other possible problems.

D. Coverage Information

• Each coverage information is calculated and displayed based on the description shown in the following table.

<Coverage information list>

Coverage information	Contents
Normalized Coverage Information <latest job=""></latest>	 Individual average dot coverage of four colors (YMCK) in the last job is calculated on an A4 basis. (The average of the ratios of dot space on each page when the printable area is defined as 100% and shown in 0.1 percent incre- ments)
Normalized Coverage Information <current cartridge="" toner=""></current>	 Individual average dot coverage of four colors (YMCK) in the current toner cartridges is calculated on an A4 basis. (The average of the ratios of dot space on each page when the printable area is defined as 100% and shown in 0.1 percent increments)
Normalized Coverage Information <total></total>	 Individual average dot coverage of four colors (YMCK) is calculated on an A4 basis for all prints performed after the printer was installed. (The average of the ratios of dot space on each page when the printable area is defined as 100% and shown in 0.1 percent incre- ments)
Normalized Color (CMYK) Coverage Information	 Average dot coverage is calculated on an A4 basis for full color printing performed after the printer was installed. (The average of the ratios of dot space on each page when the printable area is defined as 100% and shown in 0.1 percent incre- ments)
Normalized Monochrome Coverage Information	 Average dot coverage is calculated on an A4 basis for monochrome printing performed after the printer was installed. (The average of the ratios of dot space on each page when the printable area is defined as 100% and shown in 0.1 percent incre- ments)

NOTE

• Coverage information can be used as a guide and may not completely reflect the actual amount of toner used.

9. Menu

E. How to read consumable/periodic replacement parts (units) counter information.

 The lower left part of the statistics page shows numerical values that represent consumable/periodic replacement parts (units) counter information.
 The table below explains counter information that is provided by each numerical data.

<Display on the statistics page>

0/	6J07

<Meaning of counter value> (From the left of the numerical values)

No.	Contents		
1	Number of times a High-capacity toner cartridge (K) has been replaced		
2	Number of times a Standard-capacity toner cartridge (K) has been replaced		
3	Number of times a toner cartridge (K) made by companies other than Konica Minolta has been replaced		
4	Number of times a H	ligh-capacity toner cartridge (C) has been replaced	
5	Number of times a S	standard-capacity toner cartridge (C) has been replaced	
6	Number of times a toner cartridge (C) made by companies other than Konica Minolta has been replaced		
7	Number of times a H	ligh-capacity toner cartridge (M) has been replaced	
8	Number of times a S	standard-capacity toner cartridge (M) has been replaced	
9	Number of times a toner cartridge (M) made by companies other than Konica Minolta has been replaced		
10	Number of times a H	ligh-capacity toner cartridge (Y) has been replaced	
11	Number of times a Standard-capacity toner cartridge (Y) has been replaced		
12	Number of times a toner cartridge (Y) made by companies other than Konica Minolta has been replaced.		
13	Use of counterfeit toner cartridges is set at "1." (The default value is 0.)		
14	Use of toner refill cartridges is set at "1." (The default value is 0.)		
15	Rate of transfer roller use (%)		
16	Number of times a transfer roller has been replaced		
17	Rate of transfer belt unit use (%)		
18	Number of times a transfer belt unit has been replaced		
19	Rate of fusing unit use (%)		
20	Number of times a fusing unit has been replaced		
1		Year (e.g. The year 2006 is displayed as 6.)	
2	Start date of use *1	Month (e.g. January is displayed as A. February is B. March is C. And December is L.)	
3	1	Day (e.g. The day 7 is displayed as 07.)	

*1: Start date of use begins when 100 prints are complete after the first new toner cartridge was detected following the main body installation.

9.3.4 FONT LIST

A. POSTSCRIPT

Function	Prints a postscript font list.
Use	To determine which postscript fonts are available on the printer.
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

B. PCL

Function	Prints a PCL font list.
Use	 To determine which PCL fonts are available on the printer.
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

9.3.5 MENU MAP

Function	Prints a menu map.
Use	To see the printer's menu structure.
Setting /procedure	Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

9.3.6 DIRECTORY LIST

Function	 Prints a directory list of the hard disk kit's contents. 	
Use	 To check the data saved in the optional hard disk kit. 	
Setting /procedure	 Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key. NOTE This menu is available only when an optional hard disk kit is installed. 	

9.4 PAPER MENU

9.4.1 PAPER SOURCE

A. DEFAULT TRAY

Function	Sets the priority feed tray.		
Use	To set the priority media feed tray.		
Setting /procedure	 Select [DEFAULT TRAY] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired tray and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is TRAY 2. 		
	TRAY 1 "TRAY 2" TRAY 3 TRAY 4		
	NOTE • TRAY 3/TRAY 4 can be selected only when one or more optional lower feeder units are installed.		

B. TRAY 1

(1) PAPER SIZE

Function	Sets the size of the media in tray 1.
Use	To specify the size of the media loaded in tray 1.
Setting /procedure	 Select [PAPER SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired paper size and press the Menu/Select key.
	For North America The default setting is LETTER.
	For other destinations The default setting is A4.
	ANY/LETTER/LEGAL/EXECUTIVE/A4/A5/A6/B5(JIS)/B6(JIS)/GOVT LETTER/STATE- MENT/FOLIO/SP FOLIO/UK QUARTO/FOOLSCAP/GOVT LEGAL/16K/PHOTO 4 x 6 (PHOTO 10 x 15) /KAI 16/KAI 32/ENV C5/ENV C6/ENV DL/ENV MONARCH/ENV CHOU#3/ENV CHOU#4/B5(ISO)/ENV #10/ENV YOU#4/JPOST/JPOST-D/CUSTOM
	 NOTE ANY specifies any media size. CUSTOM is used to set a "custom media size." Depending on the setting selected for SYS DEFAULT MENU/PAPER/UNIT OF MEASURE, PHOTO 4 x 6 may change to PHOTO 10 x 15.

(2) CUSTOM SIZE

Function	Sets the custom size of media in tray 1.	
Use	To specify the custom size media loaded in tray 1.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [CUSTOM SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [WIDTH] or [LENGTH] and press Menu/Select key. Set desired number with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. 	
	<for america="" north=""> The default setting of WIDTH is 8.50 inches. </for>	
	WIDTH: 3.63 inches to 8.50 inches.	
	The default setting of LENGTH is 11.00 inches.	
	LENGTH: 5.83 inches to 14.00 inches. <for destinations="" other=""> • The default setting of WIDTH is 210 mm.</for>	
	WIDTH: 92 mm to 216 mm.	
	The default setting of LENGTH is 297 mm.	
	LENGTH: 148 mm to 356 mm.	
	NOTE By changing the [UNIT OF MEASURE] setting (INCHES/MILLIMETERS), the custom size units are changed. 	

(3) PAPER TYPE

Function	Sets the media type for tray 1.	
Use	To specify the type of media loaded in tray 1.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [PAPER TYPE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired paper type and press Menu/Select key. 	
	The default setting is PLAIN PAPER.	
	ANY/PLAIN PAPER/RECYCLED/THICK 1/THICK 2/LABEL/TRANSPARENCY/ ENVELOPE/POSTCARD/LETTERHEAD/GLOSSY 1/GLOSSY 2	
	NOTE ANY identifies any media type. 	

C. TRAY 2 (1) PAPER SIZE

9. Menu

Function	Sets the size of the media in tray 2.		
Use	To specify the size of the media loaded in tray 2.		
Setting /procedure	 Select [PAPER SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired paper size and press the Menu/Select key. <for america="" north=""></for> The default setting is LETTER. 		
	<for destinations="" other=""> The default setting is A4. </for>		
	LETTER	A4	

(2) PAPER TYPE

Function	Sets the media type for tray 2.		
Use	To specify the type of media loaded in tray 2.		
Setting /procedure	 Select [PAPER TYPE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired paper type and press Menu/Select key. The default setting is PLAIN PAPER. 		
	ANY "PLAIN PAPER" RECYCLED		
	NOTE ANY identifies any media type. 		

D. TRAY 3 / TRAY 4

(1) PAPER SIZE

Function	Automatically detects the set paper size and displays it.	
Use	To check the paper size.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [PAPER SOURCE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired feed tray (TRAY 3-4) and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PAPER SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. 	
	NOTE TRAY3/TRAY4 can be selected only when one or more optional lower feeder units are installed. 	

(2) PAPER TYPE

Function	Sets the paper type for tray 3 or tray 4.		
Use	To specify the type of media loaded in tray 3 or tray 4.		
Setting	The default setting is "PLAIN PAPER."		
/procedure ANY "PLAIN PA		"PLAIN PAPER"	RECYCLED
	 NOTE TRAY3/TRAY4 can be selected only when one ore more optional lower feeder units are installed. ANY identifies any media type. 		

Adjustment / Setting

E. TRAY CHAINING

Function	Sets auto tray switching.	
Use	 To specify that the printer should pull media from another tray when the specified tray runs is empty. 	
Setting	The default setting is "ON."	
/procedure	"ON"	OFF

F. TRAY MAPPING

(1) TRAY MAPPING MODE

Function	 Selects whether or not the tray mapping function is used. 		
Use	 To specify whether trays are mapped. 		
Setting	 The default setting is OFF. 		
/procedure	ON	"OFF"	

(2) LOGICAL TRAY0-9

Function	• Specifies whether jobs received from another manufacturer's printer driver are printed using tray 1 to tray 4.	
Use	• To specify the media source for print jobs using another manufacturer's printer driver.	
Setting /procedure	Only the default for LOGICAL TRAY 1 is PHYSICAL TRAY 1. PHYSICAL TRAY 2 is the default for all trays other than LOGICAL TRAY 1. PHYSICAL TRAY 1 "PHYSICAL TRAY 2"	
	PHYSICAL TRAY 3 PHYSICAL TRAY 4	
	NOTE Only the mounted Tray can be select 	ted.

9.4.2 DUPLEX

Function	Sets duplex printing mode.		
Use	To specify duplex printing. OFF : Duplex print is OFF LONG EDGE : Duplex print is ON, long edge SHORT EDGE : Duplex print is ON, short edge		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "OFF." "OFF." LONG EDGE SHORT EDGE		SHORT EDGE
		only when a duplex opt ter driver overrides the s	ion is installed.

9.4.3 COPIES

Function	 Sets the number of prints. 	
Use	 To specify the number of copies of the job to be printed. 	
Setting /procedure	 Select [COPIES] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired print number with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/ Select key. The default setting is "1" copy. 	
	"1" copy to 9999 copies.	
	NOTE The setting in the printer driver overrides the setting in this menu. 	

9.4.4 COLLATE

Function	Sets printing in sets.		
Use	To print several sets of multiple provide the several sets of multiple provide the several sets of the several se	ages.	
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON	"OFF"	
	NOTE This menu is available only when an optional hard disk kit is installed. The setting in the printer driver overrides the setting in this menu. 		

9.4.5 FINISHING

Function	 Selects an exit tray and finishing option at the staple finisher. 		
Use	To select an exit tray and finishing option when a optional staple finisher is installed. SUB TRAY : Printing to the sub tray MAIN TRAY : Printing to the main tray OFFSET : The media is fed to the main tray with each copy slightly shifted. STAPLING : Each copy is stapled and fed to the main tray. (When the collate function is selected, each set of copy is stapled.)		
Setting /procedure			

9.4.6 JOB SEPARATION

Function	Selects whether or not to use a shift function for each job that prints to the staple fin	-	
Use	isher.		
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON "OFF"		
	 NOTE This menu is available only when a staple finisher option is installed. This setting is disabled when "SUB TRAY" or "STAPLING" is selected for [FIN ISHING]. This function is available only for the following media types and media sizes. Media type: Plain/Recycled/Letterhead paper. Paper size: 182 to 216 mm in width and 257 to 356 mm in length 		

9.4.7 IMAGE ROTATION

Function	Prints 180 degrees rotated images.		
Use	• To exit the leading edge of a printer ple finisher is not installed.	d image first during printing when an optional sta-	
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON	"OFF"	
	NOTE This menu is available only when 	n an optional staple finisher is not installed.	

9.5 QUALITY MENU

9.5.1 COLOR MODE

Function	Sets the color mode for printing.		
Use	 To specify whether jobs should be printed in color or grayscale. 		
Setting	The default setting is COLOR.		
/procedure	"COLOR"	GRAYSCALE	

9.5.2 BRIGHTNESS

Function	Sets the brightness of the printed image.							
Use	To adjust the brightness of the printed image.							
Setting /procedure	 The defa 	The default setting is 0 %.						
, procedure	-15 %	-10 %	-5 %	"0 %"	+5 %	+10 %	+15 %	

9.5.3 HALFTONE

Function	 Sets the halftone characteristic of image to be printed. 		
Use	To set the halftone characteristic that is used for the printed image (picture.) LINE ART : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the resolution of the prin image. DETAIL : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the balance between the resolution and the tone reproducibility of the print image. SMOOTH : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the tone reproducibility o the print image.		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is DETAIL.		
procedure	LINE ART "DETAIL" SMOOTH		

A. IMAGE PRINTING

B. TEXT PRINTING

Function	Sets the halftone characteristic of the text to be printed.		
Use	 To set the halftone characteristic that is used for printing text (letter). LINE ART : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the resolution of the print image. DETAIL : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the balance between the resolution and the tone reproducibility of the print image. SMOOTH : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the tone reproducibility of the print image. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is LINE ART.		
	"LINE ART" DETAIL SMOOTH		

C. GRAPHICS PRINTING

Function	Sets the halftone characteristic for graphics printing.		
Use	 To set the halftone characteristic that is used for printing graphics (figures). LINE ART : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the resolution of the print image. DETAIL : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the balance between the resolution and the tone reproducibility of the print image. SMOOTH : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the tone reproducibility of the print image. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is LINE ART.		
procedure	LINE ART "DETAIL" SMOOTH		

9.5.4 EDGE ENHANCEMENT

A. IMAGE PRINTING

Function	 Selects whether or not to add edge enhancement during image printing. 	
Use	 To add edge enhancement and sharpen the outline of images when printing image data such as photographs. 	
Setting	The default setting is OFF.	
/procedure	ON	"OFF"

B. TEXT PRINTING

Function	Selects whether or not to add edge enhancement during text printing.		
Use	• To add edge enhancement and sharpen the outline of images when printing text data such as letters.		
Setting	The default setting is ON.		
/procedure	"ON"	OFF	

C. GRAPHICS PRINTING

Function	Selects whether or not to add edge enhancement during graphic printing.		
Use	 To add edge enhancement and sharpen the outline of images when printing text data such as graphics. 		
Setting	The default setting is ON.		
/procedure	"ON"	OFF	

9.5.5 EDGE STRENGTH

Function	Sets edge strength applied to printing with edge enhancement.			
Use	 To adjust edge strength depending on each image. In the order of Low, Middle, and High, edge strength increases. 			
Setting	The default setting is MIDDLE.			
/procedure	OFF	LOW	"MIDDLE"	HIGH
	NOTE If this setting is set to OFF, the [EDGE ENHANCEMENT] setting is disabled and jobs print without edge enhancement. 			

9.5.6 ECONOMY PRINT

Function	• Selects whether or not to use the economy print mode where job prints with lower print density and less toner consumption.		
Use	 To reduce toner consumption In the economy print mode, toner consumption will be reduced by approx. 30 % compared to the normal mode. 		
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON	"OFF"	
	NOTE • When [GLOSSY MODE] is set to even if the economy mode is set	"ON", the economy print setting is disabled to "ON."	

9.5.7 GLOSSY MODE

	NOTE • When this setting is set to "OI cally recognized as "OFF."	N", the [ECONOMY PRINT] setting is automati-	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is OFF. ON 	"OFF"	
Use	To print more glossy images.This mode can be used for media types other than transparencies and envelopes.		
Function	 Selects whether or not to use the glossy mode that increases toner adhesion and enhances glossiness of images. 		

9.5.8 PCL SETTING

A. CONTRAST

Function	Sets the contrast of a PCL printed image.							
Use	 To adjus 	To adjust the contrast of a PCL printed image.						
Setting	 The defa 	The default setting is 0%.						
/procedure	-15 %	-10 %	-5 %	"0 %"	+5 %	+10 %	+15 %	

B. IMAGE PRINTING (1) RGB SOURCE

Function	 Sets the RGB color space of the image to be printed. 		
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing the image (picture). SRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.		
Setting • The default setting is sRGB. /procedure			
procedure	DEVICE COLOR	"sRGB"	

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	 Sets the RGB characteristics of the image to be printed. 		
Use	used for printing the in VIVID : PHOTOGRAPHIC:	sion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that is age (picture). Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz- ng on color vividness. Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz- ng on color image.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is PHOTOGRAPHIC. VIVID "PHOTOGRAPHIC"		

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the image to be printed.		
Use	To set the gray print method that is used for the printed image (picture). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.		
Setting	The default setting is COMPOSITE BLACK.		
/procedure	"COMPOSITE BLACK" BLACK AND GRAY BLACK ONLY		

C. TEXT PRINTING (1) RGB SOURCE

Function	Sets the RGB color space of the text to be printed.		
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing text (letter). SRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.		
Setting	The default setting is sRGB.		
/procedure	DEVICE COLOR "sRGB"		

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	Sets the RGB characteristic of the text to be printed.		
Use	To set the color conversion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that is used for printing text (letter). VIVID : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz- ing on color vividness. PHOTOGRAPHIC: Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz- ing on color image.		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is VIVID. "VIVID"	PHOTOGRAPHIC	

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the text to be printed.		
Use	To set the gray print method that is used for printing text (letter). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is BLACK AND GRAY.		
,p.000 dailo	COMPOSITE BLACK "BLACK AND GRAY" BLACK ONLY		

D. GRAPHICS PRINTING (1) RGB SOURCE

Function	Sets the RGB color space of the graphics to be printed.	
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing graphics (figures). SRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is sRGB. DEVICE COLOR	"sBGB"

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	Sets the RGB characteristic for graphics printing.		
Use	To set the color conversion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that used for graphics (figures).		•
ing on color vividr		n characteristic suited to the image emphasiz-	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "VIV		PHOTOGRAPHIC

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the graphics to be printed.		
Use	 To set the gray print method that is used for graphics (figures). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is BLACK AND GRAY.		
procedure	COMPOSITE BLACK "BLACK AND GRAY" BLACK ONLY		

9.5.9 PS SETTING

A. IMAGE PRINTING

(1) RGB SOURCE

Function	Sets the RGB color space of the image to be printed.
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing the image (picture). SRGBBlueAdjustRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is sRGB. DEVICE COLOR / "sRGB" /AppleRGB /AdobeRGB1998 /ColorMatchRGB / BlueAdjustRGB

9. Menu

Adjustment / Setting

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	 Sets the RGB characteristics of the image to be printed. 	
Use	To set the color conversion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that is used for printing the image (picture). VIVID : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image empha-	
	sizing on color vividness. PHOTOGRAPHIC : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image empha-	
	sizing on color image.	
	RELATIVE COLOR : Reproduce the color that minimize the color difference between original and print by adjusting the basic color (white.)	
	ABSOLUTE COLOR : Reproduce the color that maintains the absolute color within the device reproduced color.	
Setting	The default setting is PHOTOGRAPHIC.	
/procedure	VIVID "PHOTOGRAPHIC" RELATIVE COLOR ABSOLUTE COLOR	

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	 Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the image to be printed. 	
Use	To set the gray print method that is processed by the printer for the printed image (picture). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is COMPOSITE BLACK. "COMPOSITE BLACK" BLACK AND GRAY BLACK ONLY	

(4) DESTINATION PROF

Function	Sets the output profile.	
Use	To set the custom profile used for output. AUTO : Select automatically appropriate output profile that has been pre- set at the printer with other print conditions. Custom Profile : Custom profile that has been downloaded to the printer by user.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is AUTO. "AUTO" Custom Profile	

B. TEXT PRINTING(1) RGB SOURCE

Function	 Sets the RGB color space of the text to be printed. 	
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing text (letter). sRGBBlueAdjustRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is sRGB. DEVICE COLOR / "sRGB" /AppleRGB /AdobeRGB1998 /ColorMatchRGB / BlueAdjustRGB 	

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	 Sets the RGB characteristic of the text to be printed. 		
Use	To set the color conversion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that is used for printing text (letter). VIVID : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasizing on color vividness.		
	PHOTOGRAPHIC : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image empha- sizing on color image.		
	RELATIVE COLOR : Reproduce the color that minimize the color difference between original and print by adjusting the basic color (white.)		
ABSOLUTE COLOR : Reproduce the color that maintains the absolute the device reproduced color.			
Setting	The default setting is VIVID.		
/procedure	"VIVID" PHOTOGRAPHIC RELATIVE COLOR ABSOLUTE COLOR		

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	 Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the text to be printed. 	
Use	To set the gray print method that is used for printing text (letter). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is BLACK AND GRAY. COMPOSITE BLACK AND GRAY. BLACK ONLY	
	COMPOSITE BLACK "BLACK AND GRAY" BLACK ONLY	

(4) DESTINATION PROF

Function	Sets the output profile.	
Use	To set the custom profile used for output. AUTO : Select automatically appropriate output profile that has been pre- set at the printer with other print conditions. Custom Profile : Custom profile that has been downloaded to the printer by user.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is AUTO. "AUTO"	Custom Profile

C. GRAPHICS PRINTING

(1) RGB SOURCE

Function	Sets the RGB color space of the graphics to be printed.
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for printing graphics (figures). SRGBBlueAdjustRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is sRGB. DEVICE COLOR / "sRGB" /AppleRGB /AdobeRGB1998 /ColorMatchRGB / BlueAdjustRGB

Adjustment / Setting

(2) RGB INTENT

Function	Sets the RGB characteristic of the graphics to be printed.	
Use	To set the color conversion characteristic from input RGB to device CMYK that is used for printing graphics (figures). VIVID : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image emphasizing on color vividness.	
	PHOTOGRAPHIC : Color conversion characteristic suited to the image empha- sizing on color image.	
	RELATIVE COLOR : Reproduce the color that minimize the color difference between original and print by adjusting the basic color (white.)	
	ABSOLUTE COLOR : Reproduce the color that maintains the absolute color within the device reproduced color.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is VIVID.	
	"VIVID" PHOTOGRAPHIC RELATIVE COLOR ABSOLUTE COLOR	

(3) RGB GRAY

Function	 Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the graphics to be printed. 	
Use	To set the gray print method that is used for printing graphics (figures). COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is BLACK AND GRAY.	
	COMPOSITE BLACK "BLACK AND GRAY" BLACK ONLY	

(4) DESTINATION PROF

Function	Sets the output profile.	
Use	To set the custom profile used for output. AUTO Select automatically appropriate output profile that has been pre- set at the printer with other print conditions. Custom Profile : Custom profile that has been downloaded to the printer by user.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is AUTO. "AUTO" Custom Profile	

D. SIMULATION (1) SIMULATION PROF

Function	Sets the simulation profile.
Use	 To set a CMYK simulation profile at implementation of the simulation. SWOPDIC : Profile that has been preset at the printer. Custom profile : Custom profile that has been downloaded to the printer by users.
Setting /procedure	The default setting is NONE. "NONE" /SWOP /Euroscale /CommercialPress /TOYO /DIC /Custom Profile

(2) SIMULATION INTENT

9. Menu

Function	Sets the color characteristics.	
Use	 To set the color characteristics at the implementation of the simulation. RELATIVE COLOR : Reproduce the color that minimizes the color difference between original and print by adjusting the basic color (white.) ABSOLUTE COLOR : Reproduce the color that maintains the absolute color within the device reproduced color. 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is RELATIVE COLOR. "RELATIVE COLOR" ABSOLUTE COLOR	

(3) CMYK GRAY

Function	Sets CMYK gray reproduction.	
Use	 To set the CMYK data K maintain method at the implementation of the simulation. COMPOSITE BLACK : Print according to the result of color conversion with profile. BLACK AND GRAY : Print by maintaining the value only for black (C=M=Y=0, K=255) BLACK ONLY : Print by maintaining the value only for gray (C=M=Y=0, K=any) 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is COMPOSITE BLACK.	
	"COMPOSITE BLACK" BLACK AND GRAY BLACK ONLY	

9.5.10 CALIBRATION

A. TONE CALIBRATION

Function	Sets the gradation adjustment (Image stabilization with the controller).	
Use	 To use for a particular calibration made by users. ON : Gradation adjustment is ON. OFF : Gradation adjustment is OFF. 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "ON." "ON" OFF	

B. AIDC PROCESS

Function	Controls the image stability.	
Use	To be used to adjust image quality.To be used when the transfer belt unit ar	nd/or the transfer roller are replaced.
Setting	 The default setting is "CANCEL." 	
/procedure	EXCUTE	"CANCEL"

C. CMYK DENSITY

(1) CYAN

Function	Sets the cyan level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW area respectively.	
Use	To set the cyan level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW are respectively.	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is "0." -3 to +3 	

(2) MAGENTA

Function	Sets the magenta level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW area respec- tively.	
Use	 To set the magenta level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW are respec- tively. 	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is "0." -3 to +3 	

(3) YELLOW

Function	Sets the yellow level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW area respectively.	
Use	To set the yellow level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW are respectively.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "0." -3 to +3	

(4) BLACK

Function	Sets the black level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW area respectively.	
Use	To set the black level for the HIGHLIGHT, MIDDLE, and SHADOW are respectively.	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is "0." -3 to +3 	

9.5.11 COLOR SEPARATION

Function	Sets the color separation function.		
Use	To create color separations.		
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON "OFF"		

9.6 MEMORY DIRECT

- This menu appears only when the optional hard disk kit and/or the compact flash is installed.
- This menu does not appear when "DISABLE" is selected in the [INTERFACE MENU] \rightarrow [MEMORY DIRECT] setting.

9.6.1 LIST OF FILES

Function	• Displays folders and files stored in a USB memory connected to the USB port and sends print jobs.
Use	 To select files to be printed with the USB memory direct print function. The maximum of 99 files and folders in total can be displayed. The maximum of 7 folder hierarchies can be displayed.
Setting /procedure	 Insert a USB memory into the USB port. Select [MEMORY DIRECT] → [LIST OF FILES] and select files to be printed then press the menu/select key. (When a desired file is in a folder, select the folder that includes the file and press the Menu/select key.) Specify a media type, duplex printing ON/OFF, the number of copies, and other nec- essary settings. Select [PRINT] and press the menu/select key.
	NOTE Do not remove the USB memory from the main body during memory direct printing.

9.6.2 TYPE OF FILES

Function	 Specifies the types of files to be displayed on [LIST C 	OF FILES].
Use	 To limit the types of files that can be listed. 	
Setting	The default setting is PDF.	
/procedure	PDF,JPEG,TIFF	"PDF"

9.7 CAMERA DIRECT

9.7.1 PAPER SOURCE

Function	 Sets the tray using for camera direct photo printing. 			
Use	 To change the tray using for camera direct photo printing. 			
Setting /procedure	The default setting is TRAY 2.			
	TRAY1"	"TRAY2"	TRAY3	TRAY4
	NOTE Only the mounted tray can be selected. 			

9. Menu

9.7.2 LAYOUT

Function	Sets the number of images	printed on one page for	camera direct photo printing.
Use	 To specify the number of ca sheet. 	mera direct photo printi	ng images to be printed on each
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is 1-UP. 		
	"1-UP" 1	2-UP 1 2	1 3-UP 2 3
	4-UP 1 2 3 4	12 6-UP 34 56	12 34 56 78

9.7.3 PAPER MARGIN

Function	Sets the media margin for direct photo printing.		
Use	 To perform direct photo printing with the minimum media margin. 		
Setting • The default setting is STANDARD. /procedure			
/procedure	"STANDARD"	MINIMUM	

9.7.4 IMAGE QUALITY

A. BRIGHTNESS

Function	 Sets the 	Sets the brightness of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.						
Use	 To adjust 	t the brightn	ess of the p	printed image	e for camera	direct photo	printing.	
Setting /procedure	 The defa 	ault setting is	s 0 %.					
procedure	-15 %	-10 %	-5 %	"0 %"	+5 %	+10 %	+15 %	

B. CONTRAST

Function	Sets the contrast of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.							
Use	 To adjus 	t the contras	st of the prir	nted image fo	or camera di	rect photo pr	inting.	
Setting • The default setting is 0%.								
/procedure	-15 %	-10 %	-5 %	"0 %"	+5 %	+10 %	+15 %	

C. ECONOMY PRINT

Function	Sets whether or not to use the eco ing.	pnomy print mode during camera direct photo print-	
Use	 To reduce toner consumption during camera direct photo printing. In the economy print mode, toner consumption can be reduced by approx. 30 % compared to the normal print mode. 		
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON	"OFF"	
	NOTE • When [GLOSSY MODE] is set to "ON", the economy print setting is disabled even if the economy mode is set to "ON."		

D. GLOSSY MODE

Function	• Selects whether or not to use the glossy mode during camera direct photo printing.		
Use	 To print more glossy images during camera direct photo printing. This mode can be used for media types other than transparencies and envelopes. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is OFF.	"OFF"	
	ON NOTE • When this mode is set to "ON", as being "OFF."	"OFF"	

E. RGB SOURCE

Function	Sets the RGB color space of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.		
Use	To set the input RGB color space that is used for camera direct photo printing. SRGB : Profile that has been preset to the printer. DVICE COLOR : It uses the device color in the color space.		
Setting	The default setting is sRGB.		
/procedure	DEVICE COLOR "sRGB"		

F. RGB INTENT

Function	• Sets the RGB characteristics of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.		
Use	used for camera direct photo printi VIVID : Color conver ing on color	sion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz- vividness. sion characteristic suited to the image emphasiz-	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is PHOTOGRAPHIC. VIVID "PHOTOGRAPHIC"		

G. RGB GRAY

Function	Sets the RGB gray reproduction of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.		
Use	To set the gray print method that is processed by the printer for camera direct photo printing. COMPOSITE BLACK : Print gray with the toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK AND GRAY : Print black (R=G=B=0) only with K toner and print gray with toner of 4 colors CMYK. BLACK ONLY : Print gray only with K toner.		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is COMPOSITE BLACK. "COMPOSITE BLACK" BLACK AND GRAY BLACK ONLY		

H. HALFTONE

Function	Sets the halftone characteristic of the printed image for camera direct photo printing.		
Use	 To set the halftone characteristic that is used for camera direct photo printing. LINE ART : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the resolution of the print image. DETAIL : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the balance between the resolution and the tone reproducibility of the print image. SMOOTH : HALFTONE characteristic that emphasizes the tone reproducibility of the print image. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is DETAIL. LINE ART "DETAIL" SMOOTH		

9.8 INTERFACE MENU

9.8.1 JOB TIMEOUT

Function	Sets the time to activate JOB TIMEOUT.		
Use	 To specify the amount of time before a print job times out. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is 15 seconds.		
procedure	5 seconds to 300 seconds		

9.8.2 ETHERNET

NOTE

• When the ETHERNET setting is changed, the printer restarts automatically.

A. TCP/IP

(1) ENABLE

Function	Enables TCP/IP		
Use	To specify that the printer is connected to a TCP/IP network. YES : Enable TCP/IP. Print can be made at TCP/IP environment. NO : Disable TCP/IP. Print cannot be made at TCP/IP environment.		
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is YES. "YES" 	NO	
	NOTE The screen displays [IP ADDRESS], [SUBNET MASK], [DEFAULT GATEWAY], and [DHCP/BOOTP] only when [ENABLE/YES] is selected. 		

(2) IP ADDRESS

Function	Sets the IP address of the printer used for the network.	
Use	To set the printer's IP address.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [IP ADDRESS] and press the Menu/Select key. Set desired IP address (first bite) with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the righ key▷. Repeat the above procedures and set the IP address up to fourth bite. Press the Menu/Select key. 	
	 NOTE When setting the IP address manually, [DHCP/BOOTP] (IP auto acquisition function) setting is set to [OFF] automatically. When IP address is not allocated from the server, the IP address is set automatically within the range "169.254.0.0. to 169.254.255.255." 	

(3) SUBNET MASK

Function	 Sets the subnet mask of the printer used in the network. 		
Use	To set the printer's subnet mask.		
Setting /procedure	 To set the printer's subnet mask. 1. Select [SUBNET MASK] and press the Menu/Select key. 2. Set desired subnet mask (first bite) with the up key△/down key▽ and press the right key ▷. 3. Repeat the above procedures and set the subnet mask up to fourth bite. 4. Press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is "255.255.000.000." 000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255 		

(4) DEFAULT GATEWAY

Function	 Sets the gateway address of the printer used in the network. 		
Use	To set the printer's gateway address.		
Setting /procedure	 Select [DEFAULT GATEWAY] and press the Menu/Select key. Set desired default gateway address (first bite) with the up key△/down key⊽ and press the right key▷. Repeat the above procedures and set the default gateway address up to fourth bite. Press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is "000.000.000.000." 		
	000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255		

(5) DHCP/BOOTP

Function	 DHCP: Automatically acquires an IP address from the DHCP server, if there is one in the network, and specifies whether to load other network information. BOOTP: Automatically acquires an IP address from BOOTP and specifies whether to load other network information. 		
Use	 To automatically acquire an IP address and load other network information. YES : Enable IP auto acquisition setting. No : Disable IP auto acquisition setting. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is ON. "ON" OFF		
	 NOTE When [TCP/IP/IP ADDRESS] is enabled, the [DHCP/BOOTP] setting is changed to [OFF." When IP address is not allocated from the server, [TCP/IP/IP ADDRESS] is set automatically set within the range "169.254.0.0. to 169.254.255.255." 		

(6) TELNET

Function	Select whether to enable or disable TELNET transmissions.		
Use	 To specify that the printer is connected by TELNET transmissions. 		
Setting	 The default setting is ENABLE. 		
/procedure	"ENABLE"	DISABLE	

B. NETWARE (1) ENABLE

()			
Function	Enables NetWare.		
Use	To specify that the printer is connect YES : Enable NetWare. Printing c No : Disable NetWare. Printing c	an be done via NetWare.	
Setting	The default setting is YES.		
/procedure	"YES"	"NO"	

C. APPLETALK (1) ENABLE

Function	Enables AppleTalk.	
Use	 To specify that the printer is connected to an AppleTalk network. YES : Enable AppleTalk. Printing can be done via AppleTalk. No : Disable Apple Talk. Printing cannot be done via AppleTalk. 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is YES. "YES" NO	

D. SPEED/DUPLEX

Function	Sets the communication speed and method of network.		
Use	To set the network communication speed and method.		
Setting /procedure	 Setting items Network speed (SPEED): AUTO, 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps, 1,000 Mbps Duplex mode (DUP): AUTO, full-duplex mode, half-duplex mode The default setting is AUTO. 		
	"AUTO" 100BASE FULL	10BASE FULL 100BASE HALF	10BASE HALF 1000BASE FULL

9.8.3 MEMORY DIRECT

Function	Select whether to enable or disable me	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
Use	ENABLE : MEMORY DIRECT menu is appeared, and memory dire- enabled. DISABLE : MEMORY DIRECT menu is disappeared, and memory di disabled.	
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is ENABLE. 	
/procedure	"ENABLE"	DISABLE

Adjustment / Setting

9.8.4 CAMERA DIRECT

Function	Select whether to enable or disable ca	1 5
Use	ENABLE : CAMERA DIRECT menu is appeared, and camera dire enabled. DISABLE : CAMERA DIRECT menu is disappeared, and camera o disabled.	
Setting	 The default setting is ENABLE. 	
/procedure	"ENABLE"	DISABLE

9.9 SYS DEFAULT MENU

9.9.1 LANGUAGE

Function	Sets the language of the control panel display.
Use	 To change the language of the control panel display at user's option.
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is "ENGLISH." "ENGLISH" / FRENCH / GERMAN / SPANISH / ITALIAN / PORTUGUESE / CZECH / JAPANEASE / KOREAN / SIMPLIFIED CHINESE / TRADITIONAL CHINESE/ DUTCH

9.9.2 EMULATION

A. DEF. EMULATION

Function	To set the PDL (Page Description Language).			
Use	 To fix the PDL as neces 	ssary. It usually switches automa	atically.	
Setting	 The default setting is A 	UTO.		
/procedure	"AUTO"	POSTSCRIPT	PCL	

B. POSTSCRIPT(1) WAIT TIMEOUT

Function	 Sets the amount of time to wait for a postscript file. 	
Use	• To set the amount of time to wait for a postscript file before the print job times out.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [WAIT TIMEOUT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired time with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is 0 second. 	
	"0" second to 300 seconds.	

(2) PS ERROR PAGE

Function	Specifies whether error pages are printed at the time of a postscript error.	
Use	ON : Error pages are printed a	e printed after a postscript error occurs. at the time of postscript error. ed at the time of postscript error.
Setting /procedure	 The default setting is OFF. ON 	"OFF"

(3) PS PROTOCOL

Function	 Sets the protocol to be used for postscript printing. 	
Use	To use the protocol when printing by postscript printing. AUTO : Automatic recognition NORMAL : ASCII letter code data BINARY : Binary data	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is AUTO. "AUTO" NORMAL BINARY	

C. PCL (1) CR/LF MAPPING

Function	Sets the linefeed code for PCL printing.	
Use	 To specify the type of linefeed to be used for PCL printing. 	
Setting	The default setting is "CR=CR LF=LF."	
/procedure	"CR=CR LF=LF" CR=CRLF LF=LF CR=CR LF=LFCR CR=CRLF LF=LFCR	

(2) LINES PER PAGE

Function	 Sets the lines per page for PCL printing. 	
Use	 To set the number of lines to be printed per page for PCL jobs. 	
Setting /procedure	 Select [LINES PER PAGE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired line number with the up key△/down key♡ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is 60 lines. 	
	5 lines to 128 lines	

9. Menu

(3) FONT SOURCE

Function	 Sets the PCL font to be used for PCL printing. 	
Use	To set the font to be used for printing PCL jobs.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [FONT NUMBER] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired font with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is 0. 	
	"0" to 102	
	 NOTE According to the selected [FONT NUMBER], [PITCH SIZE] or [POINT SIZE] setting is available. Details on the font which corresponds to the font No. can be checked by the PCL font list. See P113 	

<PITCH SIZE>

Function	 Sets the pitch size of the PCL font for PCL printing. 	
Use	To set the pitch size of the font to be used for printing PCL jobs.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [PITCH SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired pitch size with the up key∆/down key∇ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is 10.00 pt. 	
	0.44 pt to 99.99 pt	
	NOTE • When one of the following "FONT NUMBERs" is selected, "PITCH SIZE" set- ting is available. FONT NUMBER: 0 to 5, 21 to 23, 54 to 57, 81, 82.	

<SYMBOL SET>

Function	Sets the symbol set for PCL printing.
Use	To set the symbol set to be used for printing PCL jobs.
Setting /procedure	The default setting is PC8. "PC8" / DESKTOP / ISO4 / ISO6 / ISO11 / ISO15 / ISO17 / ISO21 / ISO60 / ISO69 / ISOL1 / ISOL2 / ISOL5 / ISOL6 / ISOL9 / LEGAL / MATH8 / MCTEXT / MSPUBL / PC775 / PC850 / PC852 / PC858 / PC8DN / PC8TK / PC1004 / PIFONT / PSMATH / PSTEXT / ROMAN8 / WIN30 / WINBALT / WINL2 / WINL2 / WINL5 / ARABIC8 / HPWARA / PC864ARA / HEBREW7 / HEBREW8 / ISOHEB / PC862HEB / ISOCYR / PC866CYR / WINCYR / PC866UKR / GREEK8 / WINGRK / PC851GRK / PC8GRK / ISOGRK

9.9.3 PAPER

A. DEFAULT PAPER

(1) PAPER SIZE

Function	Sets the default media size.
Use	To set the default media size.
Setting /procedure	 For North America> The default setting is LETTER.
	<for destinations="" other=""> The default setting is A4. </for>
	LETTER/LEGAL/EXECUTIVE/A4/A5/A6/B5(JIS)/B6(JIS)/GOVT LETTER/STATE- MENT/FOLIO/SP FOLIO/UK QUARTO/FOOLSCAP/GOVT LEGAL/16K/PHOTO 4 x 6 (PHOTO 10 x 15) /KAI 16/KAI 32/ENV C5/ENV C6/ENV DL/ENV MONARCH/ENV CHOU#3/ENV CHOU#4/B5(ISO)/ENV #10/ENV YOU#4/JPOST/JPOST-D/CUSTOM
	NOTE Depending on the setting selected for SYS DEFAULT MENU/PAPER/UNIT OF MEASURE, PHOTO 4 x 6 may change to PHOTO 10 x 15.

(2) CUSTOM SIZE

Function	Sets the custom media width and length.					
Use	To set the width and length of the custom media size.					
Setting /procedure	 Select [CUSTOM SIZE] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [WIDTH] or [LENGTH] and press Menu/Select key. Set desired number with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. 					
	<for america="" north=""> The default setting of WIDTH is 8.50 inches. </for>					
	WIDTH: 3.63 inches to 8.50 inches.					
	The default setting of LENGTH is 11.00 inches.					
	LENGTH: 5.83 inches to 14.00 inches.					
	<for destinations="" other=""> The default setting of WIDTH is 210 mm. </for>					
	WIDTH: 92 mm to 216 mm.					
	The default setting of LENGTH is 297 mm.					
	LENGTH: 148 mm to 356 mm.					
	NOTE By changing the [UNIT OF MEASURE] setting (INCHES/MILLIMETERS), the custom size units are changed. 					

(3) PAPER TYPE

Function	Sets the default media type.
Use	To set the default media type.
Setting /procedure	The default setting is PLAIN PAPER. "PLAIN PAPER"/RECYCLED/THICK 1/THICK 2/LABEL/TRANSPARENCY/ENVE- LOPE/POSTCARD/LETTERHEAD/GLOSSY 1/GLOSSY 2

B. UNIT OF MEASURE

Function	 Sets the measurement units for custom size mode. Sets the measurement units for SYS DEFAULT MENU/DEFAULT PAPER/CUSTOM SIZE mode. 			
Use	To change media measurement units.			
Setting /procedure	<for america="" north=""> The default setting is INCHES. </for>			
	<for destinations="" other=""> The default setting is MILLIMETERS. </for>			
	INCHES	MILLIMETERS		

9.9.4 GRAY SCALE PAGE

Function Use	• Sets the color mode in a color print job.	nonochrome pages included			
	AUTO : Automatically determines color or monochrome from the job's first page.				
	GRAYSCALE PRINT: Automatically determines color or mono page basis.				
	COLOR PRINT	: Always makes color printing for print.	a job where it selected color		
Setting	The default setting is AUTO.				
/procedure	"AUTO"	GRAYSCALE PRINT	COLOR PRINT		

9.9.5 STARTUP OPTIONS

A. DO STARTUP PAGE

Function	Sets whether a startup page is printed at startup of	of the printer.	
Use	 To specify whether a startup page is printed. ON : Start up page is printed at startup the printer. OFF : Start up page is not printed at startup of the printer. 		
Setting	The default setting is OFF.		
/procedure	ON "OFF"		

9.9.6 AUTO CONTINUE

Function	 At the time of the following operator call, continues auto printing by ignoring the media type or size. "PAPER EMPTY" (except "MANUAL FEED"), "xxxx SIZE ERROR", "xxxx TYPE ERROR". 			
Use	To specify whether printing should c are not available. ON : Auto continuous printing is OFF : Auto continuous printing is			
Setting /procedure	The default setting is OFF. ON	"OFF"		

9.9.7 HOLD JOB TIMEOUT

Function	 Sets the amount of time before a job saved temporarily in the printer is automatically deleted. 				
Use	 To change the amount of time a job is held before being deleted. 				
Setting /procedure	The default setting is DISABLE (No auto delete.). "DISABLE" 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 1 week				
	NOTE This menu is available only when an optional hard disk kit is installed. 				

9.9.8 ENERGY SAVER

Function	 Sets whether the printer should go into energy saver mode when not printing or pressing a print job and when the control panel is not being used. To set the amount time before energy saver mode is activated, use the "ENERGY SAVER TIME" m Energy saver mode is automatically cancelled when any of the following operation performed: The machine is restarted. A print job is received. Any of the keys on the control panel is pressed. 		
Use	To specify whether energy saver mod	e is to be used.	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is ON. "ON"	OFF	

9.9.9 ENERGY SAVER TIME

Function	Sets the amount of time before the machine enters energy saver mode after the last print is received or the last key operated.					
Use	 To change the a 	 To change the amount of time before the machine enters energy saver mode. 				
Setting /procedure	The default setting	ng is 30 minutes.				
	5 minutes	15 minutes	"30 minutes"	1 hour	3 hours	
	NOTE • This menu is a	vailable only whe	n [ENERGY SAVE	R] is not set to	o "OFF."	

9.9.10 MENU TIMEOUT

Function	Sets the amount of time before the control panel returns to the status screen from menu mode and the help display.			
Use	 To set the amount of the time before the control panel returns to the status screen from the menu and the help display. 			
Setting	The default setting is 2 n	ninutes.		
/procedure	OFF	1 minute	"2 minutes"	

9. Menu

9.9.11 LCD CONTRAST

Function	Sets the brightness of the control panel LCD display.							
Use	 To set the brightness of the control panel LCD display. 							
Setting /procedure	The default	setting is 0.						
procedure	-3	-2	-1	"0"	+1	+2	+3	

9.9.12 SECURITY

A. CHANGE PASSWORD

Function	Sets the password used for the lock panel function.
Use	To change the password used for the lock panel function. 0000 : Panel lock function is OFF. 0001 to FFFF : Valid password for panel lock function.
Setting /procedure	 Select [CHANGE PASSWORD] and press the Menu/Select key. Set desired password (first digit) with the up key△/down key▽ and press the right key▷. Repeat the above procedures to set up to fourth digit password. The default setting is 0000.
	"0000" to FFFF
	 NOTE Make sure to set the password to something other than "0000" when the [LOCK PANEL] function is set to [ON]. If you forget the password, it can be initiated (0000) with [SERVICE MENU/ RESTORE PASSWORD]. See P.171

B. LOCK PANEL

Function	 Protects the menu (except the service menu) with a password.
Use	To make the menu (except the service menu) impossible to change unless the cor- rect password is entered. OFF : Panel lock function is OFF. MINIMUM : Panel lock function is ON. Protect the operation of [INTERFACE MENU], [SYS DEFAULT MENU]. ON : Panel lock function is ON. Protect the operation of [PROF/PRINT MENU], [PRINT MENU], [PAPER MENU], [QUALITY MENU], [INTERFACE MENU], [SYS DEFAULT MENU].
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "OFF." "OFF" MINIMUM ON

Adjustment / Setting

9.9.13 CLOCK

A. DATE

9. Menu

Function	Sets the date of the printer's built-in clock.
Use	 To change the date of the printer's built-in clock.
Setting /procedure	DATE (DD.MM.YY): For Europe DATE (MM.DD.YY): For North America DATE (MM.DD.YY): For North America DATE(YY.MM.DD): For Japan, Asia, China The following shows how to set DATE (DD.MM.YY). 1. Select [CLOCK] and press the Menu/Select key. 2. Select [CLOCK] and press the Menu/Select key. 3. Set date with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the right key⊳. 4. Repeat the above procedures to set month and year.
	5. Press the Menu/Select key. DD : 01 to 31 MM : 01 to 12 YY : 2006 to 2032

B. TIME

Function	Sets the time of the printer's built-in clock.	
Use	To change the time of the printer's built-in clock.	
Setting /procedure	 Select [CLOCK] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [TIME] and press the Menu/Select key. Set hour with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the right key⊳. Repeat the above procedures to set minute. Press the Menu/Select key. 	

C. TIME ZONE

Function	Sets the time zone.
Use	• Sets the time zone.
Setting /procedure	 Select [CLOCK] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [TIME ZONE] and press the Menu/Select key. Set time zone with the up key∆/down key⊽. Press the Menu/Select key.

9.9.14 HDD FORMAT

Function	 Initializes the format of the optional hard disk kit. 						
Use	To initialize the format of the optional hard USER AREA ONLY : Initialize only use ALL : Initialize all area						
Setting /procedure	 Select [HDD FORMAT] and press the Me Select desired initialization method and p [ARE YOU SURE?] is displayed. By pressing the Menu/Select key, initializ without pressing the Menu/Select key, the The printer restarts and the hard disk is i cannot be cancelled. The default setting is USER AREA ONLY. USER AREA ONLY NOTE 	oress the Menu/Select key. ation starts. By pressing the Cancel key e start of initialization can be cancelled. nitialized. Once the initialization starts, it					
	This menu is available only when an o	ptional hard disk kit is installed.					

9.9.15 CARD FORMAT

Function	 Initializes the format of the optional compact flash card. 						
Use	To initialize the format of the optional compact flash card. USER AREA ONLY : Initialize only user area ALL : Initialize all area						
Setting /procedure	 Select [CARD FORMAT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired initialization method and press the Menu/Select key. [ARE YOU SURE?] is displayed. By pressing the Menu/Select key, initialization starts. By pressing the Cancel key without pressing the Menu/Select key, the start of initialization can be cancelled. The printer restarts and the hard disk is initialized. Once the initialization starts, it cannot be cancelled. 						
	The default setting is USER AREA ONLY. USER AREA ONLY ALL						
	NOTE This menu is available only when an optional compact flash card is installed. 						

9.9.16 RESTORE DEFAULTS

Function	Restores the factory default of each setting.						
	To restore the defaults of all settings. RESTORE NETWORK : Restore the default for [INTERFACE MENU/ETHERNET] setting.						
Use	RESTORE PRINTER : Restore the default for [PAPER MENU], [QUALITY MENU], [SYS DEFAULT MENU] and [CAMERA DIRECT] setting.						
	RESTORE ALL : Restore defaults for all settings.						
Setting /procedure	 Select [RESTORE DEFFAULTS] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired mode and press the Menu/Select key. [ARE YOU SURE?] is displayed. By pressing the Menu/Select key, initialization starts. By pressing the Cancel key without pressing the Menu/Select key, the start of initialization can be cancelled. The printer restarts and the hard disk is initialized. Once the initialization starts, it cannot be cancelled. 						
	The default setting is RESTORE NETWORK.						
	RESTORE NETWORK RESTORE PRINTER RESTORE ALL						

List of reset items 1

					Reset Item			Ref.
	I	tem		RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	Page
		DEFAU	ILT TRAY	—	Reset	Reset	TRAY2	P.114
			PAPER SIZE	—	Reset	Reset	Letter	P.114
		TRAY1	CUSTOM	_	Reset	Reset	WIDTH: 8.5inches LENGTH: 11inches	P.115
		INALI	SIZE	_	Reset	Reset	WIDTH:210mm LENGTH:297mm	F.113
			PAPER TYPE	_	Reset	Reset	PLAIN PAPER	P.115
		TRAY2	PAPER SIZE	—	Reset	Reset	Letter	P.116
PAPER	DADED		PAPER TYPE	—	Reset	Reset	PLAIN PAPER	P.116
MENU	PAPER SOURCE	TRAY 3 to 4	PAPER TYPE	_	Reset	Reset	PLAIN PAPER	P.116
			HAINING	—	Reset	Reset	ON	P.117
			PLEX	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.117
		COPIES		—	Reset	Reset	1	P.118
		COI	COLLATE		Reset	Reset	OFF	P.118
		FINI	SHING	—	Reset	Reset	MAIN TRAY	P.118
		JOB SE	PARATION	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.119
		IMAGE I	ROTATION	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.119

*: Destination items. For details, see the page referenced.

					Reset Item			Ref.
1				RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	Page
	COLOR MODE			_	Reset	Reset	COLOR	P.119
	BF	RIGHTNES	3	—	Reset	Reset	0 %	P.119
		IMAGE P	RINTING	_	Reset	Reset	DETAIL	P.120
	HALFTONE	TEXT PF	RINTING		Reset	Reset	LINE ART	P.120
		GRAF PRIN	PHICS TING	_	Reset	Reset	DETAIL	P.120
	5005	IMAGE P	RINTING	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.120
	EDGE ENHANCE-	TEXT PF	RINTING	_	Reset	Reset	ON	P.121
	MENT	-	PHICS TING	_	Reset	Reset	ON	P.121
	EDG	E STRENG	iTH	_	Reset	Reset	MIDDLE	P.121
	ECO	NOMY PRI	NT	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.121
	GLO	DSSY MOD)E	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.122
		CONT	RAST	_	Reset	Reset	0 %	P.122
	PCL SETTING	TEXT	RGB SOURCE	_	Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.122
			RGB INTENT	_	Reset	Reset	PHOTO- GRAPHIC	P.122
QUALITY MENU			RGB GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	COMPOSITE BLACK	P.123
			RGB SOURCE	—	Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.123
			RGB INTENT	_	Reset	Reset	VIVID	P.123
			RGB GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	BLACK AND GRAY	P.123
			RGB SOURCE	_	Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.124
		GRAPHICS PRINTING	RGB INTENT		Reset	Reset	VIVID	P.124
			RGB GRAY	—	Reset	Reset	BLACK AND GRAY	P.124
			RGB SOURCE		Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.124
	PS	IMAGE	RGB INTENT	—	Reset	Reset	PHOTO- GRAPHIC	P.125
	SETTING	PRINTING	RGB GRAY		Reset	Reset	COMPOSITE BLACK	P.125
			DESTINA- TION PROF	_	Reset	Reset	AUTO	P.125

magicolor 5550/5570

					Reset Item			Ref.
Item				RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	Page
			RGB SOURCE	_	Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.125
		TEXT	RGB INTENT	_	Reset	Reset	VIVID	P.126
		PRINTING	RGB GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	BLACK AND GRAY	P.126
			DESTINA- TION PROF	_	Reset	Reset	AUTO	P.126
			RGB SOURCE		Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.126
	PS	-	RGB INTENT		Reset	Reset	VIVID	P.127
	SETTING		RGB GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	BLACK AND GRAY	P.127
QUALITY MENU			DESTINA- TION PROF	_	Reset	Reset	AUTO	P.127
MENO			SIMULA- TION PROF	_	Reset	Reset	NONE	P.127
			SIMULA- TION INTENT	_	Reset	Reset	RELATIVE COLOR	P.128
			CMYK GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	COMPOSITE BLACK	P.128
		TO CALIBF	NE RATION	_	Reset	Reset	ON	P.128
	CALIBRA-		CYAN		Reset	Reset	0	P.128
	TION	СМҮК	MAGENTA	—	Reset	Reset	0	P.129
		DENSITY	YELLOW	—	Reset	Reset	0	P.129
			BLACK	—	Reset	Reset	0	P.129
	COLO	R SEPARA	TION	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.129

*: Destination items. For details, see the page referenced.

				Reset Item			Ref. Page	
	Iter	n	RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value		
MEMORY DIRECT	TYF	PE OF FILES	—	Reset	Reset	PDF	P.130	
	PAP	ER SOURCE		Reset	Reset	TRAY2	P.130	
		LAYOUT		Reset	Reset	1-UP	P.131	
	PAF	PER MARGIN		Reset	Reset	STANDARD	P.131	
	IMAGE QUALITY	BRIGHTNESS	_	Reset	Reset	0 %	P.131	
		CONTRAST	_	Reset	Reset	0 %	P.131	
CAMERA		ECONOMY PRINT	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.132	
DIRECT		GLOSSY MODE	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.132	
			RGB SOURCE		Reset	Reset	sRGB	P.132
		RGB INTENT	_	Reset	Reset	PHOTO- GRAPHIC	P.132	
		RGB GRAY	_	Reset	Reset	COMPOS- ITE BLACK	P.133	
		HALFTONE		Reset	Reset	DETAIL	P.133	

List of reset items 4

					Reset Item			Ref. Page
	Iter	n		RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	
	JO	B TIMEOU	Т	Reset	_	Reset	15 seconds	P.134
			ENABLE	Reset	_	Reset	YES	P.134
			IP ADDRESS	Reset	_	Reset	000.000. 000.000	P.134
		TCP/IP	SUBNET MASK	Reset	_	Reset	255.255. 000.000	P.135
INTER-	ETHERNET		DEFAULT GATEWAY	Reset	_	Reset	000.000. 000.000	P.135
FACE MENU			DHCP/ BOOTP	Reset	_	Reset	ON	P.135
		NETV	TELNET	Reset	—	Reset	ENABLE	P.135
			VARE	Reset	—	Reset	YES	P.136
		APPLE	E TALK	Reset		Reset	YES	P.136
		SPEED/DUPLEX		Reset	_	Reset	AUTO	P.136
	MEM	MEMORY DIRECT				Reset	ENABLE	P.136
	CAM	ERA DIRE	СТ	Reset	_	Reset	ENABLE	P.137

*: Destination items. For details, see the page referenced.

magicolor 5550/5570

					Reset Item			Ref.
٦				RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	Page
	LANGUAGE				Reset	Reset	ENGLISH	P.137
		DEF. EM	ULATION	—	Reset	Reset	AUTO	P.137
			WAIT TIM- EOUT		Reset	Reset	0	P.137
		POST- SCRIPT	PS ERROR PAGE	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.138
			PS PRO- TOCOL	_	Reset	Reset	AUTO	P.138
			CR/LF MAPPING	_	Reset	Reset	CR=CR LF=LF	P.138
	EMULA- TION		LINES PER PAGE		Reset	Reset	60	P.138
	non	PCL	FONT SOURCE/ FONT NUMBER		Reset	Reset	0	P.139
			FONT SOURCE/ PITCH SIZE	_	Reset	Reset	10.00	P.139
SYS			FONT SOURCE/ SYMBOL SET	_	Reset	Reset	PC8	P.139
DEFAULT MENU	PAPER	DEFAULT	PAPER SIZE	_	Reset	Reset	LETTER	P.140
			CUSTOM SIZE/ WIDTH	_	Reset	Reset	8.5 inches	P.140
		PAPER	CUSTOM SIZE/ LENGTH	_	Reset	Reset	11.00 inches	r. 140
			PAPER TYPE	_	Reset	Reset	PLAIN PAPER	P.140
		UNIT OF N	MEASURE	_	Reset	Reset	INCHES	P.141
	STARTUP OPTIONS	DO START	TUP PAGE	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.141
	AUT	O CONTIN	UE	—	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.141
	HOLD	JOB TIME	OUT	—	Reset	Reset	DISABLE	P.142
	ENE	RGY SAVE	ĒR	—	Reset	Reset	ON	P.142
	ENERC	GY SAVER	TIME		Reset	Reset	30 minutes	P.142
	MEI	NU TIMEOU	JT		Reset	Reset	2 minutes	P.142
	LCD	CONTRAS	ST		Reset	Reset	0	P.143
	SECURITY	CHANGE P	ASSWORD	_	Reset	Reset	0000	P.143
		LOCK	PANEL		Reset	Reset	OFF	P.143

				Reset Item			Ref.	
	Item			RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL	Initial Value	Page
			TRAY 1	_	Reset	Reset	OFF	P.152
	ENABLE	BLE PAPER	TRAY 2		Reset	Reset	ON	
SYS DEFAULT MENU			TRAY 3		Reset	Reset	ON	F. 152
	WARNING		TRAY 4		Reset	Reset	ON	
			Reset	Reset	ON	P.153		
			LOW		Reset	Reset	ON	P.153

Item			Reset Item		Initial Value	Ref. Page
		RESTORE NETWORK	RESTORE PRINTER	RESTORE ALL		
	Admin Password	_	Reset	Reset	administrator	_
	Refresh Rate	_	Reset	Reset	30 sec.	_
	Contact Name	_	Reset	Reset	KONICA MINOLTA Customer Support	_
	Contact Information	_	Reset	Reset	http://printer. konicaminolta. com/	_
Ę	Contact Utility Link	—	Reset	Reset	http://page scope.com/	_
PageScope Web Connection	Corporate URL	_	Reset	Reset	http://printer. konicaminolta. com/	_
/eb C	Supplies and Accessories	—	Reset	Reset	http://www.q- shop.com/	_
Scope V	Product Help URL	_	Reset	Reset	http://printer. konicaminolta. com/	_
age	Auto IP	Reset	_	Reset	DHCP	_
<u>م</u>	WINS/NetBIOS Resolution	Reset	_	Reset	Checked	_
	** NetBIOS Name	Reset	_	Reset	MC5550- XXXXXX / MC5570- XXXXXX	_
	Domain/Workgroup	Reset	—	Reset	WORK- GROUP	_
	Use DHCP	Reset	_	Reset	Checked	
	IPP Config Printer Name	Reset	_	Reset	Blank	_
	IPP Config Printer Location	Reset	_	Reset	Blank	_

*: Destination items. For details, see the page referenced.

**: XXXXXX are the final 6 digits of the printer's MAC address.

9.9.17 ENABLE WARNING

A. PAPER EMPTY

(1) TRAY1

Function	• Specifies whether a [TRAY 1 Paper Empty] (manual feed tray) is displayed as a nor- mal message when it is empty.		
Use	 To specify whether to display a [TRAY 1 Paper Empty] message as a normal message. ON : Paper empty message is displayed on normal message when tray is empty. OFF : Paper empty message is not displayed on normal message when tray is empty. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is OFF. "OFF" ON		

(2) TRAY2

Function	Specifies whether a [TRAY 2 Paper Empty] is displayed as a normal message when it is empty.		
Use	 To specify whether to display a [TRAY 2 Paper Empty] message as a normal message. ON : Paper empty message is displayed on normal message when tray is empty. OFF : Paper empty message is not displayed on normal message when tray is empty. 		
Setting /procedure	The default setting is ON. OFF	"ON"	

(3) TRAY3

Function	• Specifies whether a [TRAY 3 Paper Empty] is displayed as a normal message when it is empty.	
Use	 To specify whether to display a [TRAY 3 Paper Empty] message as a normal message. ON : Paper empty message is displayed on normal message when tray is empty. OFF : Paper empty message is not displayed on normal message when tray is empty. 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is ON. OFF "ON" NOTE This menu is available only when an optional lower feeder unit is installed.	

(4) TRAY4

Function	Specifies whether a [TRAY 4 Paper Empty] is displayed as a normal message when it is empty.
Use	 To specify whether to display a [TRAY 4 Paper Empty] message as a normal message. ON : Paper empty message is displayed on normal message when tray is empty. OFF : Paper empty message is not displayed on normal message when tray is empty.
Setting /procedure	The default setting is ON. OFF ON
	NOTE This menu is available only when an optional lower feeder unit is installed.

B. TONER LOW

Function	Specifies whether or pet a warning an	poors when the tener is about to rup out
Use	Specifies whether or not a warning appears when the toner i	
Setting	 The default setting is ON. 	
/procedure	"ON"	OFF

C. I-UNIT LOW

Function	Specifies whether or not a warning app	ears when the print unit is about to reach the
Use	end of its service life.	
Setting	 The default setting is ON. 	
/procedure	"ON"	OFF

magicolor 5550/5570

9.10 MAINTENANCE MENU

9.10.1 How to enter the MAINTENANCE MENU

A. Procedure

- 1. Display [MAINTENANCE MENU] on the menu screen and press the Menu/Select key.
- 2. [ENTER PASSWORD] message is displayed.
- Set the first digit of user password with the up key∆/down key∇ and press the right key▷.
- 4. Repeat the above procedures to set up to fourth digit of password. (The initial setting for user password is [0000].)
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key.

B. Exiting

Press the Cancel key.

9.10.2 PRINT MENU

A. EVENT LOG

Function	Prints the event log.		
Use	To check the jams/troubles that occurred, and history of replacing the consumables, etc. The items that can be checked are as follows. Paper Jam Error : The number of jams occurred and its history Engine Fatal Error : The history of troubles which caused service call Fuser Unit : The history of replacing the fusing unit Transfer Belt : The history of replacing the transfer belt Second Trans : The history of replacing the transfer roller Toner Cartridge : The history of replacing the print unit		
	Trouble Counter : Troubles counted at each section		
Setting /procedure	 Select [EVENT LOG] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key. 		

B. HALFTONE 64

Function	Prints the halftone pattern with 25 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
Setting /procedure	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALFTONE 64] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

C. HALFTONE 128

Function	Prints the halftone pattern with 50 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	 To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
Setting /procedure	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALFTONE 128] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

D. HALFTONE 256

Function	Prints the halftone pattern with 100 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	 To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
/procedure	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALFTONE 256] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

E. GRADATION

Function	Prints the gradation pattern.
Use	To check the gradation reproductively.
	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the Tray. Select [GRADATION] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

9.10.3 ALIGNMENT

A. TOP ADJUSTMENT

Function	Adjusts the top margin of media for single-sided printing.
Use	To correct a misaligned print image. PLAIN PAPER : Adjust the head margin of plain paper. THICK : Adjust the head margin of thick paper. ENVELOPE : Adjust the head margin of envelope. TRANSPARENCY: Adjust the head margin of transparency.
Setting /procedure	 Select [TOP ADJUSTMENT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired media type and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired adjustment amount with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default settings are as follows respectively. PLAIN PAPER: -2, THICK: 4, ENVELOPE: 13, TRANSPARENCY: 5
	-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)

magicolor 5550/5570

B. LEFT ADJUSTMENT

Function	Adjusts the left margin of media for single-sided printing.
Use	To correct a misaligned print image. LEFT ADJ TRAY 1: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 1 (manual tray.) LEFT ADJ TRAY 2: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 2. LEFT ADJ TRAY 3: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 3. LEFT ADJ TRAY 4: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 4.
Setting /procedure	 Select [LEFT ADJUSTMENT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired tray and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired adjustment amount with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is "0."
	-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)

C. LEFT ADJ DUPLEX

Function	 Adjusts the left margin of media for double-sided printing.
Use	 To correct a misaligned print image. LEFT ADJ TRAY 1: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 1 (manual tray.) LEFT ADJ TRAY 2: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 2. LEFT ADJ TRAY 3: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 3. LEFT ADJ TRAY 4: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 4.
Setting /procedure	 Select [LEFT ADJ DUPLEX] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired tray and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired adjustment amount with the Up key△/Down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is "4."
	-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)

D. TRANSFER POWER

(1) SIMPLEX PASS

Functions	Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the single-sided pages for each media type.
Use	 To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -8 to +7
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [SIMPLEX PASS] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired media type with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key.

(2) DUPLEX PASS

Functions	Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the duplexed pages for each media type.
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -8 to +7
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [DUPLEX PASS] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired media type with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key.

(3) MANUAL DUPLEX

Functions	Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the manual duplexed pages for each media type.
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -8 to +7
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [MANUAL DUPLEX] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired media type with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key.

E. IMG ADJ THICK

Functions	• To fine-adjust density of printed images of each color for thick paper and OHP transparencies.
Use	To change the density of the printed image for each color with thick paper and OHP transparencies.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -5 to +5
Adjustment Instructions	Light color: increase the setting value Dark color: decrease the setting value
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [IMG ADJ THICK] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key.

F. IMG ADJ BLACK

Functions	To fine-adjust the density of the printed image for a black printing.
Use	To vary the density of the printed image of a black printing.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -2 to +2
Adjustment Instructions	If the black is light, increase the setting value. If the black is dark, decrease the setting value.
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [IMG ADJ BLACK] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/ Select key.

9.10.4 SUPPLIES

A. REPLACE

(1) TRANS. BELT

Function	Resets the transfer belt counter.
Use	 To use when the transfer belt has been replaced.
Setting /procedure	 Select [MAINTENANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS. BELT] and select YES. Press the menu/select key and reset the counter.

(2) TRANS. ROLLER

Function	Resets the transfer roller counter.
Use	To use when the transfer roller has been replaced.
Setting /procedure	 Select [MAINTENANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS Roller] and select YES. Press the menu/select key and reset the counter.

(3) FUSER UNIT

Function	Resets the fusing unit counter.
Use	 To use when the fusing unit has been replaced.
Setting /procedure	 Select [MAINTENANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [FUSER UNIT] and select YES. Press the Menu/select key and reset the counter.

10. Adjustment item list

	Replacement part/Service job														
Adj	ustment/set	ting Items		No	Change media type (tray 2)	Install lower feeder unit	Install duplex option	Replace transfer roller	Replace transfer belt	Replace fusing unit	Replace PH unit	Replace MFP board	Replace print control board	RESTORE DEFAULTS	Execute F/W update
	QUALITY MENU	CALIBRA- TION	AIDC PROCESS	1				(2)	(2)	(2)					
			CONTROLLER EW	2									(2)		0
		FIRMWARE VERSION	ENGINE F/W	3								(3)	(0	
5		VENDION	BOOT F/W	4											0
MENU			TOP ADJUSTMENT	5	0	0					(1)				
Σ	SERVICE MENU	ALIGN- MENT	LEFT ADJUSTMENT	6		0					(2)				
	MENO		LEFT ADJ DUPLEX	7			0								
			TRANS. BELT	8					(1)						
		SUPPLIES	TRANS. ROLLER	9				(1)							
			FUSER UNIT	10						(1)					
Re-	Re-entry			11										0	
F/W	F/W update			12								(2)	(1)		
Rer	Remounting of parameter chip (MFPB)			13								(1)			

* This table shows the adjustment items that are required when a part of the machine has been replaced. Priority order, if applicable, during the adjustment procedures is indicated by the corresponding number.

11. SERVICE MENU

11.1 How to enter the service menu

NOTE

 Make sure not to reveal the password of the service menu to any unauthorized person.

A. Procedure 1

- 1. Display [SERVICE MENU] on the menu screen and press the Menu/Select key.
- 2. [ENTER PASSWORD] message is displayed.
- 3. Set first digit of password with the up key \triangle /down key ∇ and press the right key \triangleright .
- Repeat the above procedures to set up to seventh digit of password. Enter "KMM5550" or "KMM5570" for service password.

NOTE

- The service password needs to correspond to the product name.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key.

B. Procedure 2

1. Turn the power switch ON while pressing the up key \bigtriangleup and the menu/select key at the power switch OFF.

NOTE

- Continue to press the up key∆ and the menu/select key until "INITIALIZING" message appears on the control panel.
- 2. When initializing is complete, the service menu appears.

NOTE

 Password authentication is not required before starting to operate the service menu, however, once the service menu is closed, you need to enter the password to display the service menu again.

C. Exiting

Press the Cancel key.

11.2 Service menu function tree

	SER	/ICE MENU	Ref. Page			
SERIAL NUMBER	SERIAL NUMBER					
FIRMWARE	CONTROLLER F/W					
VERSION	ENGINE F/W					
	FINISHER F/W (or	ly when the optional staple finisher is mounted.)				
	BOOT F/W					
ALIGNMENT	TOP ADJUSTMENT					
	LEFT ADJUSTME	NT	P.163			
	LEFT ADJ DUPLE	x	P.163			
	TRANSFER	SIMPLEX PASS	P.164			
	POWER	DUPLEX PASS	P.164			
		MANUAL DUPLEX	P.165			
	IMG ADJ THICK	·	P.165			
	IMG ADJ BLACK					
	IMAGE ADJ PARAM					
	MAXIMUM DENSITY					
	FUSER CONTROL					
DIAGNOSIS MENU	PRINT MENU	MAINTENANCE INFO	P.167			
		EVENT LOG	P.169			
		CONFIGURATION PG	P.169			
		HALFTONE 64	P.169			
		HALFTONE 128	P.170			
		HALFTONE 256	P.170			
		GRADATION	P.170			
SUPLLIES	REPLACE	TRANS. BELT	P.170			
		TRANS. ROLLER	P.170			
	FUSER UNIT					
RESTORE PASSWORD			P.171			
SOFT SWITCH	SOFT SWITCH 1					
	SOFT SWITCH 2					
	SOFT SWITCH 3					
	SOFT SWITCH 4					

11.3 SERVICE MENU

11.3.1 SERIAL NUMBER

Function	Displays the serial number of the printer.
Use	To confirm the printer's serial number.
Setting /procedure	 Select [SERVICE MENU] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [SERIAL NUMBER] and press the Menu/Select key. The serial number of the printer is displayed.

11.3.2 FIRMWARE VERSION

Function	Displays the version number of the printer firmware.		
Use	 To use when the firmware is updated. To confirm the version number of the printer firmware. CONTROLLER F/W: Firmware of controller ENGINE F/W : Firmware of engine FINISHER F/W : Firmware of finisher (only when the optional staple finisher is mounted.) BOOT/F/W : Boot firmware 		
Setting /procedure	 Select [FIRMWARE VERSION] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired firmware and press the Menu/Select key. Version number of firmware is displayed. 		

11.3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. TOP ADJUSTMENT

Function	 Adjusts the top margin of media for single-sided printing. 				
Use	To correct a misaligned print image. PLAIN PAPER : Adjust the head margin of plain paper. THICK : Adjust the head margin of thick paper. ENVELOPE : Adjust the head margin of envelope. TRANSPARENCY: Adjust the head margin of transparency.				
Setting /procedure	 Select [TOP ADJUSTMENT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired paper type and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired adjustment amount with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. The default settings are as follows respectively. PLAIN PAPER: -2, THICK: 4, ENVELOPE: 13, TRANSPARENCY: 5 				
	-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)				

B. LEFT ADJUSTMENT

Function	Adjusts the left margin of media for single-sided printing.				
Use	 To correct a misaligned print image. LEFT ADJ TRAY 1: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 1 (manual tray.) LEFT ADJ TRAY 2: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 2. LEFT ADJ TRAY 3: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 3. LEFT ADJ TRAY 4: Adjust the left margin of media fed from tray 4. 				
Setting /procedure	 Select [LEFT ADJUSTMENT] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired tray and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired adjustment amount with the up key∆/down key and press the Menu/Select key. The default setting is "0." 				
	-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)				

C. LEFT ADJ DUPLEX

Function	 Adjusts the left margin of media for double-sided printing. 		
Use	 To correct a misaligned print image. LEFT ADJ TRAY 1: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 1 (manual tray.) LEFT ADJ TRAY 2: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 2. LEFT ADJ TRAY 3: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 3. LEFT ADJ TRAY 4: Adjust the left margin of duplex print media fed from tray 4. 		
Setting 1. Select [LEFT ADJ DUPLEX] and press the Menu/Select key. /procedure 2. Select desired tray and press the Menu/Select key. 3. Select desired adjustment amount with the up key∆/down key⊽ and p Menu/Select key. • The default setting is "4."			
-15 to +15 (1 step: 0.2 mm)			

D. TRANSFER POWER

(1) SIMPLEX PASS

Functions	 Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the single-sided pages for each media type. 			
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.			
Adjustment Range	The default setting is "0." -8 to +7			
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.			
Setting/ 1. Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Procedure 2. Select [SIMPLEX PASS] and press the Menu/Select key. 3. Select desired media type with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. 4. Select desired setting value with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key.				

(2) DUPLEX PASS

Functions	 Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the duplexed pages for each media type. 			
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.			
Adjustment Range	The default setting is "0." -8 to +7			
Adjustment To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.				
Setting/ 1. Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Procedure 2. Select [DUPLEX PASS] and press the Menu/Select key. 3. Select desired media type with the up key△/down key▽ and press the key. 4. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press Select key.				

(3) MANUAL DUPLEX

Functions	Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the manual duplexed pages for each media type.			
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.			
Adjustment Range	The default setting is 0. -8 to +7			
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.			
Setting/ 1. Select [TRANSFER POWER] and press the Menu/Select key. Procedure 2. Select [MANUAL DUPLEX] and press the Menu/Select key. 3. Select desired media type with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. 4. Select desired setting value with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key.				

E. IMG ADJ THICK

Functions	To fine-adjust density of printed images of each color for thick paper and OHP trans- parencies.			
Use	 To change the density of the printed image for each color with thick paper and OHP transparencies. 			
Adjustment Range	The default setting is "0." -5 to +5			
Adjustment Instructions	Light color: increase the setting value Dark color: decrease the setting value			
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [IMG ADJ THICK] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. 			

F. IMG ADJ BLACK

Functions	To fine-adjust the density of the printed image for a black printing.			
Use	 To vary the density of the printed image of a black printing. 			
Adjustment Range	The default setting is "0." -2 to +2			
Adjustment Instructions	6,			
Setting/ 1. Select [IMG ADJ BLACK] and press the Menu/Select key. Procedure 2. Select desired setting value with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Select key.				

magicolor 5550/5570

G. IMAGE ADJ PARAM

Function	Adjusts the printer in case of an image quality problem (uneven density)	
Use	 To correct image quality problems (uneven density) due to the printer being operated at a high altitude. 	
Setting /procedure	The default setting is "0." "0"	1
	NOTE • When the setting has been changed, be sure to run a CALIBRATION/AIDC process. See P.128	

H. MAXIMUM DENSITY

Functions	• To adjust gradation, color, and image density to target reproduction levels by varying the maximum amount of toner sticking to media through auxiliary manual fine-adjustment of gamma of each color after gradation adjust.
Use	• An image quality problem is not corrected even after gradation adjust has been run.
Adjustment Range	The default setting is "2." -10 to +10
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the maximum amount of toner sticking, increase the setting value. To decrease the maximum amount of toner sticking, decrease the setting value.
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [MAXIMUM DENSITY] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired setting value with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key.
	NOTE • When the setting has been changed, be sure to run a CALIBRATION/AIDC process. See P.128

I. FUSER CONTROL

Function	Sets the heater lamp lighting control so that it implements the flicker standards.
Use	To use when flickering from fluorescent light occurs.
	0: Not set flicker control 1: Control flickering 2: Not control flickering 3: Undefined (When "3" is selected, it becomes "0: Not set flicker control.")
Setting	The default setting is "0."
/procedure	0 to 3

magicolor 5550/5570

11.3.4 DIAGNOSIS MENU

A. PRINT MENU

(1) MAINTENANCE INFO

Functions	 To produce an output of a list of setting values, adjustment values, total counter values, and others. 	
Use	To check the maintenance information. The items which can be checked are as follows. Device Caution Information : Process caution information Count (total) : Counter value for each color Coverage (total) : Coverage rate for each color Replace count (total) : Number of times IU, TC, transfer belt, transfer roller, and fusing unit have been replaced. Imaging Unit Information : Information concerning the print unit Toner Cartridge Information: Information concerning the toner cartridge	
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [MAINTENANCE INFO] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key. 	

PROCESS CAUTION INFORMATION 1

BIT	IT Item		Description		
0	_		—		
1	_		—		
2	—		<u> </u>		
3	—		—		
4	—		—		
		1	 IDC sensor output values are out of the specified range. 		
5	IDC Sensor (Front) failure	0	 Front door open/close, power switch OFF/ON, and normal image stabilization are complete besides the ones listed above. 		
6	—		—		
7	—		_		
8	—	_			
9)		—		
		1	IDC sensor output values are out of the specified range.		
10	IDC Sensor (Back) failure		 Front door open/close, power switch OFF/ON, and normal image stabilization are complete besides the ones listed above. 		
11	Color Shift Test Pattern failure		 The number of points detected in the main scan direction is more or less than the specified value during main scan direc- tion registration correction. The number of points detected in the sub scan direction is more or less than the specified value during sub scan direc- tion registration correction. 		
			 Front door open/close, power switch OFF/ON, and normal image stabilization are complete besides the ones listed above. 		

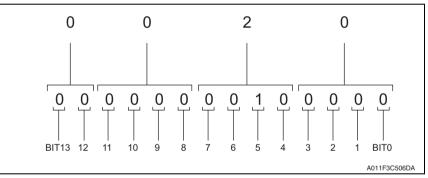
BIT	Item	Description
12	Color Shift Adjust failure	 The color shift amount is greater than the specified range during main scan direction registration correction. The color shift amount is greater than the specified range during sub scan direction registration correction. The skew correction amount is greater than the specified value.
		 Front door open/close, power switch OFF/ON, and normal image stabilization are complete besides the ones listed above.
13	_	—

<How to read process caution information>

• Convert the numerical value of the hexadecimal number printed on "PROCESS CAU-TION INFORMATION 1 in [MAINTENANCE INFO] into the binary number, it compares with the allocation of each BIT, and the caution status is confirmed.

ex. When process caution information is displayed as 0x0020.

- 1. Convert four end digits "0020" of 0x0020 into the binary number (14 digits).
- The BIT number is allocated in converted value "0000000100000." (BIT0 to BIT13 is sequentially allocated from the first digit.)



3. In this case, BIT No. "5" corresponds to "1". From the "PROCESS CAUTION INFOR-MATION 1", IDC sensor (front) malfunction can be detected.

Conversion method from hexadecimal number to binary number

1. The hexadecimal number (four digits) is converted in each digit based on the following table.

Hexadeci- mal number	Binary number						
0	0000	4	0100	8	1000	С	1100
1	0001	5	0101	9	1001	D	1101
2	0010	6	0110	А	1010	E	1110
3	0011	7	0111	В	1011	F	1111

2. Match the converted numerical value of four digits, then two head digits are excluded and it is assumed the binary number of 14 digits.

(2) EVENT LOG

Functions	To print the EVENT LOG.		
Use	 To check the jams/troubles which occurred, and the history of replacing the consumables. The items which can be checked are as follows. Paper Jam Error : The number of times jam have occurred and its history 		
	Engine Fatal Error : The history of the troubles which required service call Fuser Unit : The history of replacing the fusing unit Transfer Belt : The history of replacing the transfer belt Second Trans : The history of replacing the transfer roller Toner Cartridge : The history of replacing the toner cartridge Imaging Unit : The history of replacing the print unit Trouble Counter : Trouble counting for each section		
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [EVENT LOG] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key. 		

(3) CONFIGURATION PG

Functions	 Prints the information concerning the Configuration.
Use	To check the adjustment values set by the Maintenance Menu and Service Menu. The items which can be checked are as follows. TOP ADJUSTMENT LEFT ADJUSTMENT LEFT ADJ DUPLEX TRANSFER POWER IMG ADJ THICK IMG ADJ BLACK IMAGE ADJ PARAM MAXIMUM DENSITY FUSER CONTROL
Setting/ Procedure	 Select [CONFIGURATION PG] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

(4) HALF TONE 64

Functions	Prints the halftone pattern with 25 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	 To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALF TONE 64] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

(5) HALF TONE 128

Functions	 Prints the halftone pattern with 50 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	 To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
Setting/ Procedure	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALF TONE 128] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key∆/down key⊽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

(6) HALF TONE 256

Functions	 Prints the halftone pattern with 100 % level for CMYK respectively.
Use	 To check the unevenness of the density and the pitch.
Setting/ Procedure	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [HALF TONE 256] and press the Menu/Select key. Select desired color with the up key△/down key▽ and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key.

(7) GRADATION

Functions	Prints the gradation pattern.	
Use	To check the gradation reproductively.	
	 Set the A4S or letterS media on the tray. Select [GRADATION] and press the Menu/Select key. Select [PRINT] and press the Menu/Select key. 	

11.4 SUPPLIES

11.4.1 REPLACE

A. TRANS. BELT

Function	Resets the transfer belt counter.	
Use	To use when the transfer belt has been replaced.	
	 Call the service menu to the screen. Select [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS. BELT], and select "YES." Press the menu/select key and reset the counter. 	

B. TRANS. ROLLER

Function	Resets the transfer roller counter.	
Use	To use when the transfer roller has been replaced.	
	 Call the service menu to the screen. Select [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [TRANS. ROLLER], and select "YES." Press the menu/select key and reset the counter. 	

C. FUSER UNIT

Function	Resets the fusing unit counter.	
Use	 To use when the fusing unit has been replaced. 	
Setting /procedure	 Call the service menu to the screen. Select [MAINTENANCE MENU] → [SUPPLIES] → [REPLACE] → [FUSER UNIT], and select "YES". Press the menu/select key and reset the counter. 	

11.5 RESTORE PASSWARD

Function	Reinitializes the user password used for the "INTERFACE MENU / SYSTEM DEFAULT MENU / MAINTENANCE MENU" set by user.	
Use	 To reinitialize the user password when the menu cannot be opened even when entering the correct password. To reinitialize the user password when the user forgets the password. YES : Initialize password NO : Not initialize password 	
Setting /procedure	 Select "RESTORE PASSWORD" and press the Menu/Select key. Select "YES" and press the Menu/Select key. Return the password set at "INTERFACE MENU / SYSTEM DEFAULT MENU / MAINTENANCE MENU" to "0000." 	
	The default setting is NO.	
	YES "NO"	

11.6 SOFT SWITCH

Function	
Use	Not used.
Setting /procedure	

12. Other functions

12.1 Rewriting security information into the hard disk kit and the compact flash

12.1.1 Outline

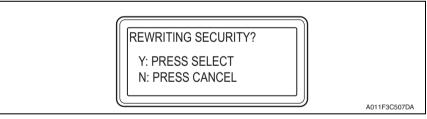
- When the optional hard disk kit and compact flash are formatted, they save the values specific to the print control board (PRCB) installed in each printer. Because of this, the hard disk kit and compact flash that have been used in a printer cannot be used in a different printer, in this way, job and account information stored in the hard disk kit and compact flash are protected.
- There may be cases where the print control board is damaged and replaced, in that case, it is required to rewrite security information into the user's current hard disk kit and compact flash in order to continue to use the data included in the hard disk kit and compact flash.
- Without rewriting new security information, the hard disk kit and compact flash can be used if they are formatted again.

12.1.2 Procedure

 After the print control board (PRCB) replacement, in the condition of the hard disk and the compact flash being installed, turn the power switch ON while pressing the up key∆ and the cancel key.

NOTE

- Continue to press the up key \bigtriangleup and the cancel key until "INITIALIZING" message appears on the control panel.
- 2. After startup, "REWRITING SECURITY" message will appears.



3. When the menu/select key is pressed, the printer starts rewriting security information and then start operating. (If the cancel key is pressed, the printer starts operating without rewriting security information.)

INITIALIZING AND REWRITING

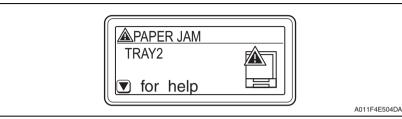
A011F3C508DA

Troubleshooting

13. Jam display

13.1 Misfeed display

• When a media misfeed occurs a message is displayed on the control panel.



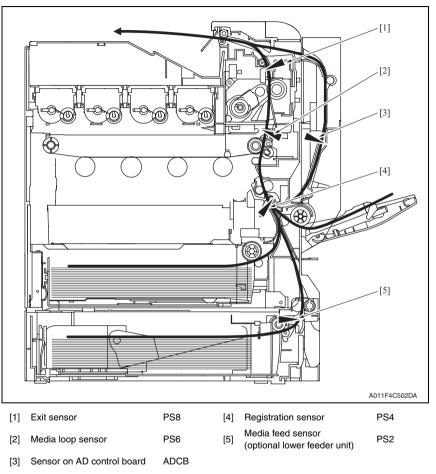
Display		Misfeed location	Misfeed processing	Action
LCD 1	LCD 2		location	ACIION
	FUSER/EXIT	 Fusing/exit section 	Right doorFusing unit	P.178
	SECOND TRANS	Transfer section	Right door	P.177
	VERTICAL TRANS	Vertical transport	 Right door Tray 3 right door Tray 4 right door 	P.176 See the service man- ual for the optional lower feeder unit.
	DUPLEX1	 Duplex transport section 	Dupley option door	See the service man- ual for the duplex option.
	DUPLEX2	 Duplex media feed section 	 Duplex option door 	
	TRAY1	Tray 1 media feed	Manual feed trayRight door	P.176
PAPER JAM	TRAY2	Tray 2 media feed	Tray 2Right door	P.176
	TRAY3	Tray 3 media feedVertical Transport	Tray 3Tray 3 right door	See the service man- ual for the optional lower feeder unit.
	TRAY4	Tray 4 media feedVertical Transport	Tray 4Tray 4 Right Door	
	FINISHER	 Finisher transport sec- tion 	Finisher cover	
	SUB EXIT	 Sub tray media exit section 	Finisher cover	See the service man- ual for the optional sta- ple finisher.
	UPPER TRANS	 Horizontal transport section 	 Horizontal trans- port upper cover 	
	MAIN EXIT	 Main tray media exit section 	Finisher cover	
	STAPLER	 Stapling section 	 Stapling cover 	
Service call: F001		 Media misfeed in control logic 	_	P.179

13.2 Misfeed display resetting procedure

• Open the relevant door, clear the sheet of misfed media, and close the door.

13.3 Sensor layout

• System equipped with a lower feeder units and a duplex option



13.4 Solution

13.4.1 Initial check items

• When a media misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does media meet product specifications?	Change media.
Is media curled, wavy, or damp.	Change media.Instruct user in correct media storage.
Is a foreign matter present along the media path, or is the media path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the media path.
Are the media separator fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective media sepa- rator finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the edge guide and trailing edge stop at correct position to accommodate the media?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

13.4.2 Misfeed at tray 2 media feed section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at tray 2 media feed section	The media does not unblock the registration sensor (PS4) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media feed clutch /1 (CL1) is turned ON.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts		
Registration sensor (PS4) Media feed clutch /1 (CL1) Intermediate transport motor (M3)	MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM		
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Initial check items	_	_	
2	PS4 sensor check	MFPB PJ15MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3	
3	CL1 operation check	MFPB PJ6MFPB-2 (ON)	J-6	
4	M3 operation check	MFPB PJ27MFPB-3 to 7	C-5	
5	Change MFPB.	_		

13.4.3 Misfeed at tray1 media feed section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
	The media does not unblock the registration sensor (PS4) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media feed clutch /2 (CL3) is turned ON.

Relevant electrical parts		
Registration sensor (PS4) Media feed clutch /2 (CL3) Intermediate transport motor (M3)	MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS4 sensor check	MFPB PJ15MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3
3	CL3 operation check	MFPB PJ6MFPB-4 (ON)	J-6
4	M3 operation check	MFPB PJ27MFPB-3 to 7	C-5
5	Change MFPB.	_	_

13.4.4 Misfeed at transfer section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description		
	The registration sensor (PS4) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media has unblocked PS4.		
Detection of misfeed at transfer section	The media does not block the exit sensor (PS8) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media has unblocked the registration sensor (PS4).		
	When a sheet of media is passing through the registration sensor (PS4), the pres- sure sequence of the 2nd transfer section has not started.		
Detection of media left in transfer section	The registration sensor (PS4) is unblocked when the power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		
	The media loop sensor (PS6) is unblocked when the power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		

Relevant electrical parts		
Registration sensor (PS4) Exit sensor (PS8) Media loop sensor (PS6) Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5)	MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS4 sensor check	MFPB PJ15MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3
3	PS8 sensor check	MFPB PJ4MFPB-6 (ON)	I-2
4	PS6 sensor check	MFPB PJ16MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3 to 4
5	CL5 operation check	MFPB PJ10MFPB-8 (ON)	J-7
6	Change MFPB.	_	_

13.4.5 Misfeed at fusing/exit section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description		
Detection of	The exit sensor (PS8) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media has blocked PS8.		
misfeed at fusing/ exit section	The media does not unblock the sensor on the AD control board (ADCB) even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has blocked the exit sensor (PS8) during media feeding from the duplex option.		
Detection of media left in fusing/exit section	The exit sensor (PS8) is blocked when the power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.		

Relevant electrical parts	
	AD control board (ADCB) MFP board (MFPB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Initial check items	—	—
2	PS8 sensor check	MFPB PJ4MFPB-6 (ON)	I-2
3	Change PWB-E DU.	—	_
4	Change PWB-A.	—	—

magicolor 5550/5570

13.4.6 Media misfeed in control logic

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
	 By TOD timing The pressure operation of the first image transfer mechanism is not completed during full color printing. The first image transfer mechanism is not in the state of retraction during mono-chrome printing.
Detection of	While the leading edge of an image has reached the position where the first image transfer process is performed, the pressure operation of the second image transfer mechanism is not completed.
media misfeed in control logic	A duplex print job is sent with the number of pages that goes beyond the maxi- mum number of pages allowed to be in the printer for the selected media type.
	When trying to feed duplex media though there is no media to be fed to the duplex print unit.
	When printing is directed with the duplex print unit selected as a media source and an exit media set to be fed to the duplex unit.
	While two sheets of media are in the printer, printing is directed with normal media feed settings other than a duplex media feed setting.
	In duplex printing, a size error or media error occurs.

Relevant electrical parts		
Print control board (PRCB) AD control board (ADCB)	MFP board (MFPB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check printer driver settings.	_	_
2	Change ADCB.	_	
3	Change PRCB.	_	
4	Change MFPB.	_	_

14. Malfunction code

14.1 Trouble codes (service call)

 The printer's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code and maintenance call mark on the control panel.



14.1.1 Trouble code list

• For the details of the malfunction codes of the options, see the service manual for the corresponding option.

LCD1 (service call ID)	LCD2/LCD3 (error description)	Item	Detection timing
0010	P MOTOR 1	Color PC drum motor malfunction	 The color PC drum motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started.
0010			 The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the color PC drum motor is being rotated.
0017	P MOTOB 2	Intermediate transport motor malfunction	 The intermediate transport motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started.
0017	r Moton 2		 The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the intermediate transport motor is being rotated.
0018	D MOTOR 2	Developing motor /K malfunction	 The developing motor /K does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started.
0018			 The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the developing motor /K is being rotated.
001B	D MOTOR 1	Developing motor / Y,M,C malfunction	 The developing motor /Y,M,C does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started.
0015			• The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the developing motor /Y,M,C is being rotated.

LCD1	LCD2/LCD3		
(service call ID)	(error description)	Item	Detection timing
0046	FUSER FAN	Fusing fan motor malfunction	 The fusing fan motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started. The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the fusing fan motor is being rotated.
004C	OZONE FAN	Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction	 The ozone ventilation fan motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started. The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the ozone venti- lation fan motor is being rotated.
004E	POWER FAN	DC power supply fan motor malfunction	 The DC power supply fan motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started. The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the DC power supply fan motor is being rotated.
0060	FUSER MOTOR	Fusing motor malfunction	 The fusing motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time while it is being started. The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the fusing motor is being rotated.
0094	XFER DETACH 2	2nd image transfer pressure / retraction failure	 The retraction position sensor /2 is not activated (retracted position) within a given period of time after the retraction sequence of the 2nd transfer roller has been started. The retraction position sensor /2 is not deactivated (pressed position) within a given period of time after the pressure sequence of the 2nd transfer roller has been started.
0096	XFER DETACH 1	1st image transfer pressure / retraction failure	 The retraction position sensor /1 is not activated (retracted position) within a given period of time after the intermediate transport motor has started rotating. The retraction position sensor /1 is not deacti- vated (pressed position) within a given period of time after the intermediate transport motor has started rotating.
0300	Polygon Motor	Polygon motor malfunction	 The polygon motor does not rotate evenly even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been started. The motor lock signal remains HIGH for a given period of consecutive time while the polygon motor is being rotated.
0310	LASER ERROR	Laser malfunction	 The SOS signal is not detected within a given period of time after the output of the laser has been started.

14. Malfunction code

LCD1 (service call ID)	LCD2/LCD3 (error description)	ltem	Detection timing
0500	FUSER ERROR	Heating roller warm-up failure	 The thermistor /1 does not detect the specified temperature and the warm-up cycle is not com- pleted even after the lapse of a given period of time after the cycle has been started.
0501	FUSER ERROR	Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure	 The thermistor /2 does not detect the specified temperature and the warm-up cycle is not com- pleted even after the lapse of a given period of time after the cycle has been started.
0510	FUSER ERROR	Abnormally low heating roller temperature	 The temperature detected by the thermistor /1 remains lower than the specified value for a given period of time or longer.
0511	FUSER ERROR	Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature	 The temperature detected by the thermistor /2 remains lower than the specified value for a given period of time or longer.
0520	FUSER ERROR	Abnormally high heat- ing roller temperature	 The temperature detected by the thermistor /1 remains higher than the specified value for a given period of time or longer. The heater lamp remains ON for a given period of time or longer.
0521	FUSER ERROR	Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature	 The temperature detected by the thermistor /2 remains higher than the specified value for a given period of time or longer.
0B30	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher aligning plate drive malfunction	
0B47	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher media holding drive malfunction	
0B48	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher exit roller pres- sure/retraction mal- function	
0B4A	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher aligning belt pressure/retraction malfunction	For details, see the optional staple finisher service manual. XXXXX
0B4C	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher media ejector motor malfunction	
0BA0	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher tray up/down motor ascent/descent drive malfunction	
0BE1	FINISHER ERROR	Finisher fan motor mal- function	
0F52	TE SENSOR Y	Toner level sensor /Y malfunction	An error occurs on the toner level sensor board (TLSB).
0F53	TE SENSOR M	Toner level sensor /M malfunction	
0F54	TE SENSOR C	Toner level sensor /C malfunction	
0F55	TE SENSOR K	Toner level sensor /K malfunction	

LCD1 (service call ID)	LCD2/LCD3 (error description)	Item	Detection timing
133B	FINISHERE COMMUNI- CATION	Finisher communication error	 A communication error occurs between the main body and the finisher.
13C0	ENGINE H/W ERROR	MFP board malfunction	A communication error occurs in MFP board (MFPB).
13E2	FLASH WRITE	Flash ROM write error	Flash ROM writing is found faulty during a check.
13E3	FLASH DEVICE	Flash ROM device fault	 An erase error occurs during erasing of data in flash ROM.
3C00	EEPROM1	Trouble related to	Contact the responsible people of KONICA
3C10	EEPROM2	security	MINOLTA when not returning in power switch OFF/ON.
3FFB	FINISHER ROM	Finisher flash ROM error	An error occurs with flash ROM of the optional staple finisher.
C002	RAM ERROR	RAM error at startup (standard memory)	RAM error at standard memory is detected dur- ing printer start-up.
C003	RAM ERROR	RAM error at startup (expanded memory)	RAM error at expanded memory is detected dur- ing printer start-up.
C013	H/W ADDRESS	MAC address error at startup	 Invalid MAC address is detected during printer start-up.
C015	BOOT ROM	Boot ROM error at startup	Boot ROM error is detected during printer start- up.
C025		Controller ROM error (Configuration informa- tion error)	 Lead error of destination setting file is detected during the printer starting.
C026	CONTROL- LER ROM	Controller ROM error (Access error)	 Flash ROM access error is detected during the printer starting.
C027		Controller ROM error (Data error)	 Final check sum error is detected during the printer starting.
C050	HDD ERROR	HDD access error	 When correct access to the hard disk kit is failed during access.
C051	HDD DISK FULL	HDD full error	 Range for user space is full during access to the hard disk kit.
C052	CARD ERROR	Compact flash access error	When correct access to the compact flash card is failed during access.
C053	CARD FULL	Compact flash full error	 Range for user space is full during access to the compact flash card.
C060	UPDATE ERROR	Firmware update error	Firmware update fails to complete correctly dur- ing update.
C071	H/W CON- FIG ERROR	Hardware configura- tion error	An error occurs with hardware configuration (video clock etc.).
FFFF	I/F COMM ERROR	Interface Communica- tion error	 Correct communication is failed when receiving/ sending the command between MFPB and PRCB.

14.2 Resetting a malfunction

• To reset a malfunction, turn the power switch OFF and then ON again.

magicolor 5550/5570

14.3 Solution

14.3.1 0010: Color PC drum motor malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
Color PC drum motor (M2)	MFP board (MFPB) DC power supply (DCPU)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M2 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	_	—
2	Check M2 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	_	—
3	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—
4	M2 operation check	MFPB PJ14MFPB-3 to 7	C-5
5	Change M2.	—	—
6	Change MFPB.		
7	Change DCPU.	_	—

14.3.2 0017: Intermediate transport motor malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
Intermediate transport motor (M3)	MFP board (MFPB) DC power supply (DCPU)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M3 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	_	—
2	Check M3 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	_	—
3	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	M3 operation check	MFPB PJ27MFPB-3 to 7	C-5
5	Change M3.	—	—
6	Change MFPB.	—	—
7	Change DCPU.		_

14.3.3 0018: Developing motor /K malfunction

Relevant ele	ectrical parts
	MFP board (MFPB) DC power supply (DCPU)

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M5 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	_	—
2	Check M5 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	_	—
3	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—
4	M5 operation check	MFPB PJ33MFPB-3, 5 to 7	C-6
5	Change M5.	_	—
6	Change MFPB.		—
7	Change DCPU.		

14.3.4 001B: Developing motor /Y,M,C malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts			
Developing motor /Y,M,C (M1) Driving unit		MFP board (MFPB) DC power supply (DCPU)		
		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Check the M1 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	_	—	
2	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—	
3	M1 operation check	MFPB PJ8MFPB-3, 5 to 7	C-7	
4	Change driving unit.	—	—	
5	Change MFPB.	—	—	
6	Change DCPU.	—	—	

14.3.5 0046: Fusing fan motor malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts				
Fusing	g fan motor (FM2)	MFP board (MFPB)			
	WIRING DIAGRAM				
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Check the FM2 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—		
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—		
3	FM2 operation check	MFPB PJ21MFPB-1 (ON) MFPB PJ21MFPB-3 (LOCK)	C-9		
4	Change FM2.	_	_		
5	Change MFPB.	_	_		

14.3.6 004C: Ozone ventilation fan motor malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts			
Ozone	Dzone ventilation fan motor (FM3) MFP board (MFPB)			
WIRING DIAGRAM		M		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Check the FM3 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	_	_	
3	FM3 operation check	MFPB PJ6MFPB-5 (ON) MFPB PJ21MFPB-7 (LOCK)	J-6	
4	Change FM3.	—	—	
5	Change MFPB.	_		

5

14.3.7 004E: DC power supply fan motor malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts			
DC po	DC power supply fan motor (FM1) MFP board (MFPB)			
WIRING DIAGRAM			M	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Check the FM1 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	—	
3	FM1 operation check	MFPB PJ9MFPB-1 (ON) MFPB PJ9MFPB-3 (LOCK)	C-2	
4	Change FM1.	—	—	

14.3.8 0060: Fusing motor malfunction

Change MFPB.

Relevant electrical parts		
Fusing motor (M4)	MFP board (MFPB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M4 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	_	—
2	Check the fusing unit driving mechanism for possible overload and correct as necessary.	—	_
3	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_
4	M4 operation check	MFPB PJ19MFPB-3, 5 to 7	C-9
5	Change M4.		—
6	Change MFPB.		—

Troubleshooting

magicolor 5550/5570

14.3.9 0094: 2nd image transfer pressure/retraction failure

Relevant electrical parts		
Retraction position sensor /2 (PS10) Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5) Intermediate transport motor (M3)	MFP board (MFPB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M3 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Check the CL5 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—
3	Check M3 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check CL5 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	PS10 sensor check	MFPB PJ10MFPB-6 (ON)	J-7
7	CL5 operation check	MFPB PJ10MFPB-8 (ON)	J-7
8	M3 operation check	MFPB PJ27MFPB-3 to 7	C-5
9	Change M3.	—	—
10	Change CL5.	—	_
11	Change MFPB.	_	—

14.3.10 0096: 1st image transfer pressure/retraction failure

Relevant electrical parts		
Retraction position sensor /1 (PS9) Pressure/retraction clutch /1 (CL4) Intermediate transport motor (M3)	MFP board (MFPB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the M3 connector for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	—	_
2	Check the CL4 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_
3	Check M3 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
4	Check CL4 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	—	—
5	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—
6	PS9 sensor check	MFPB PJ7MFPB-13 (ON)	C-2
7	CL4 operation check	MFPB PJ7MFPB-10 (ON)	C-1
8	M3 operation check	MFPB PJ27MFPB-3 to 7	C-5
9	Change M3.	—	—
10	Change CL4.		
11	Change MFPB.		

14.3.11 0300: Polygon motor malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts			
PH unit		MFP board (MFPB)		
		WIRING DIAGRA	٨M	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Check the cable and connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	_	_	
2	Change PH unit.	—	—	
3	Change MFPB.	—	—	

14.3.12 0310: Laser malfunction

Relevant electrical parts			
PH unit		MFP board (MFPB)	
WIRING DIAGRAM			M
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the cable and connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	—	—
2	Change PH unit.	—	—
3	Change MFPB.	—	—

- 14.3.13 0500: Heating roller warm-up failure
- 14.3.14 0501: Fusing pressure roller warm-up failure
- 14.3.15 0510: Abnormally low heating roller temperature
- 14.3.16 0511: Abnormally low fusing pressure roller temperature
- 14.3.17 0520: Abnormally high heating roller temperature

14.3.18 0521: Abnormally high fusing pressure roller temperature

Relevant electrical parts	
Fusing unit MFP board (MFPB)	
	DC power supply (DCPU)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Check the fusing unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	—	—
2	Check the fusing unit, DCPU, and MFPB for proper connection and correct as nec- essary.	_	—
3	Change fusing unit.	_	—
4	Change MFPB.	—	—
5	Change DCPU.	_	_

- 14.3.19 0F52: Toner level sensor /Y malfunction
- 14.3.20 0F53: Toner level sensor /M malfunction
- 14.3.21 0F54: Toner level sensor /C malfunction
- 14.3.22 0F55: Toner level sensor /K malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts				
Toner level sensor board (TLSB)		MFP board (MFPB)			
		WIRING DIAGRA	M		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Check the TLSB and MFPB for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—		
2	Change TLSB.	_	_		
3	Change MFPB.	—	_		

14.3.23 133B: Finisher communication malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
FS control board (FSCB)	MFP board (MFPB)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Reboot the main body.	_	—
2	Change FSCB.	—	_
3	Change MFPB.	—	_

14.3.24 13C0: MFP board malfunction

	Relevant electrical parts
MFP board (MFPB)	

			WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—	
2	Change MFPB.		_	

14.3.25 13E2: Flash ROM write error

13E3: Flash ROM device fault 14.3.26

	Relevant electrical parts				
Print c	ontrol board (PRCB)	MFP board (MFPB)			
WIRING DIAGRAM					
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Check the MFPB for proper connection and correct as necessary.	_	_		
2	Change PRCB.	—	—		
3	Change MFPB.	—	—		

14.3.27 3FFB: Finisher flash ROM error

correct as necessary.

	Relevant electrical parts			
FS control board (FSCB)				
WIRING DIAGRAM				
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
4	Check the FSCB for proper connection and			

Change FSCB.

C002: RAM error at startup (standard memory) 14.3.28

C003: RAM error at startup (expanded memory) 14.3.29

	Relevant electrical parts			
Print control board (PRCB)		Standard memory Expanded memory		
		WIRING DIAGRA	M	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—	
2	Check connection state of the standard/ expanded memory and correct as neces- sary.	_	_	
3	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.		—	
4	Change the standard/expanded memory.	—	—	
5	Change PRCB.	—	—	

1

2

14.3.30 C013: MAC address error at startup

14.3.31 C015: BOOT ROM error at startup

Relevant electrical parts

Print control board (PRCB)

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Reboot the main body.	_	—
2	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_
3	Change PRCB.	—	—

14.3.32 C025: Controller ROM error (Configuration information error)

14.3.33 C026: Controller ROM error (Access error)

14.3.34 C027: Controller ROM error (Data error)

Print control board (PRCB)

		WIRING DIAGRA	M
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Reboot the main body.	—	
2	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_
3	If this error message is displayed after update of firmware, conduct the firmware update procedures again.	—	
4	Change PRCB.	_	—

Relevant electrical parts

14.3.35 C050: HDD access error

	Relevant electrical parts			
Print c	Print control board (PRCB) Hard disk kit (HDD)			
WIRING			M	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—	
2	Check the HDD connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—	
3	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—	
4	Change HDD.	—	—	
5	Change PRCB.	—	—	

14.3.36 C051: HDD full error

	Relevant electrical parts				
Print c	ontrol board (PRCB)	Hard disk kit (HDD)			
		WIRING DIAGRA	M		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—		
2	Delete the job hold in "PROOF/PRINT MENU" to increase the available range for user space.	_	_		
3	Check the HDD connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	—	—		
4	Format HDD with "SYS DEFAULT MENU/ HDD FORMAT."	_	_		
5	Change HDD.	—			

14.3.37 C052: Compact flash access error

	Relevant electrical parts				
Print c	ontrol board (PRCB)	Compact flash card			
		WIRING DIAGRAM			
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—		
2	Check the compact flash for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_		
3	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—		
4	Change compact flash.	—	—		
5	Change PRCB.	—	—		

14.3.38 C053: Compact flash full error

Relevant electrical parts	
Print control board (PRCB) Comp	pact flash card

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM			
Step		Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)		
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—		
2	Delete the job hold in "PROOF/PRINT MENU" to increase the available range for user space.	—	_		
3	Check the compact flash for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—		
4	Format compact flash with "SYS DEFAULT MENU/CARD FORMAT."	_	—		
5	Change compact flash.	_	—		

14.3.39 C060: Firmware update error

Relevant electrical parts

Print control board (PRCB)

		WIRING DIAGRA	M
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)
1	Reboot the main body.	_	—
2	Check the cable that has been used for update of the firmware for proper connec- tion and correct as necessary.	—	_
3	Check the firmware update file and if the file is not the correct one, update the firmware again.	_	_
4	Check the firmware update procedure and if the procedure is not correct, update the firmware again.	_	_
5	Update the firmware again.	_	—
6	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	
7	Change PRCB.		

magicolor 5550/5570

14.3.40 C071: Hardware configuration error

Relevant electrical	parts

Print control board (PRCB)

		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Reboot the main body.	_	—	
2	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_	
3	Change PRCB.	_	—	

14.3.41 FFFF: Interface Communication error

	Relevant electrical parts			
Print c	ontrol board (PRCB)	MFP board (MFPB)		
		WIRING DIAGRA	M	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (electri- cal component)	
1	Reboot the main body.	—	—	
2	Check the PRCB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary	_	—	
3	Check the MFPB connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	—	
4	Change MFPB.	—	—	
5	Change PRCB.	—	—	

3

Change MFPB.

Change PRCB.

Change DCPU.

NO

YES

F-3

15. Power supply troubles

15.1 Machine is not energized at all (DCPU operation check)

Relevant electrical parts					
Power switch (S1) MFP board (MFPB)		DC power supply (DCPU)			
Step	Check item	Location (electri- cal component)	Result	Action	
1	Is the power source voltage being applied to CN1DCPU on DCPU?	H to I-4	NO	Check wiring from power outlet to PG1 to CN1DCPU.	
2	Are fuses (F1 and F2) on DCPU conduct- ing?	_	NO	Change DCPU.	

15.2 Control panel indicators do not light

Are DC 24 V, DC 5 V and DC 3.3 V being

applied to PJ1MFPB on the MFP board?

Relevant electrical parts		
Print control board (PRCB) Operation board (OB)	DC power supply (DCPU)	

Step	Check item	Location (electri- cal component)	Result	Action
1	Is the power source voltage being applied to CN1DCPU on DCPU?	H to I-4	NO	Check wiring from power outlet to PG1 to CN1DCPU.
2	Are fuses (F1 and F2) on DCPU conduct- ing?	_	NO	Change DCPU.
3	Is J22PRCB on PRCB properly con- nected?	I-10	NO	Reconnect.
4	Is J7000PRCB on PRCB properly con- nected?	I-11	NO	Reconnect.
			NO	Reconnect.
5	Is CN20P on PWB-OP properly con- nected?	K-10 to 11	YES	Change PWB-OP. Change PWB-P.

magicolor 5550/5570

15.3 Fusing heaters do not operate

Relevant electrical parts					
Safety switch /Fr (S2) Safety switch /Rt (S3) Fusing unit	DC power supply (DCPU)				
Location (electri-					

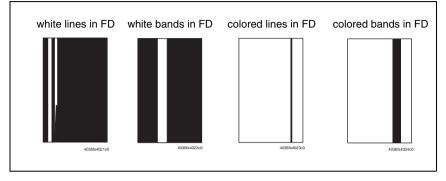
Step	Check item	cal component)	Result	Action
1	Is the power source voltage being applied to CN1DCPU on DCPU? The front door and right door should in closed position at this time.	H to I-4	NO	Check wiring from power outlet to PG1 to CN1DCPU.
2	Is the power source voltage being applied	H to I-3	YES	Change fusing unit.
-	to CN2DCPU on DCPU?	111010	NO	Change DCPU.

16. Image quality problems

16.1 Solution

16.1.1 White lines in FD, white bands in FD, colored lines in FD, and colored bands in FD

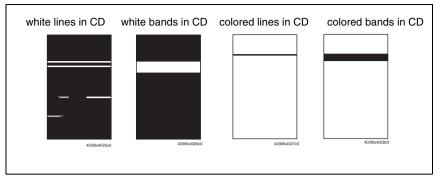
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1		Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
2		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
3	Print unit	Is the connector or contact termi- nal between each print unit and PH unit connected properly?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or reconnect the connector.
4		Is the developing bias contact ter- minal in good contact?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or check the terminal position.
5	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
6		Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints or oil?	YES	Clean.
7	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
8		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
9	Media path	Is there a foreign matter on the media path?	YES	Remove foreign matter.
10	Fusing unit	Is the fusing entrance guide plate dirty or scratched?	YES	Clean. Change the fusing unit.
11		Is the separator fingers dirty?	Y? YES Change the fusing unit.	
12		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 11?	NO	Change the transfer belt. Change the PH unit.

16.1.2 White lines in CD, white bands in CD, colored lines in CD, and colored bands in CD

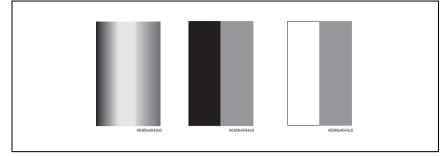
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1		Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
2		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
3	Print unit	Is the connector or contact termi- nal between each print unit and PH unit connected properly?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or reconnect the connector.
4		Is the developing bias contact ter- minal in good contact?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or check the terminal position.
5	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
6		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the Transfer Roller.
7	Media path	Is there a foreign matter on the media path?	YES	Remove the foreign matter.
8	Fusing unit	Is the fusing entrance guide plate dirty or scratched?	YES	Clean.
9		Is the separator fingers dirty?	YES	Change the fusing unit.
10		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9? NO Change the DC power support Change the transfer belt.		Change the DC power supply. Change the transfer belt.

16.1.3 Uneven density in FD

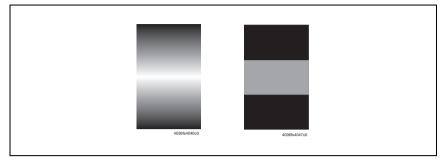
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Adjustment	The printer is being operated at	YES	Adjust the image with "IMAGE ADJ PRAM"
	/Setting	high altitude.	120	→ SERVICE MENU/ALIGN- MENT/IMAGE ADJ PRAM
2	Are there scratches or lines evi- Print unit dent on photo conductor surface?		YES	Change the print unit.
3		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
4	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
5	- ()	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
6	Transfer belt	Is the terminal dirty?	YES	Clean.
7		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
8		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7?	NO	Change the transfer belt unit. Change the PH unit. Change High voltage unit /1. Change High voltage unit /2.

16.1.4 Uneven density in CD

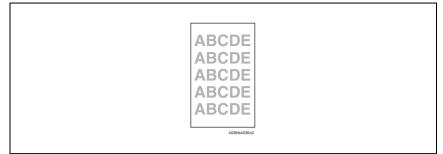
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Adjustment The printer is being operated at /Setting high altitude.		YES	Adjust the image with "IMAGE ADJ PRAM". → SERVICE MENU/ALIGN- MENT/IMAGE ADJ PRAM
2	Print unit	Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
3		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
4		Is the contact on the rail of the Transfer belt in good contact with the mating part?	NO	Check or correct contact.
5		Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints or oil?	YES	Clean.
6	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
7		Is the terminal dirty?	YES	Clean.
8		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
9		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8?	NO	Change the transfer belt. Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2.

16.1.5 Low image density

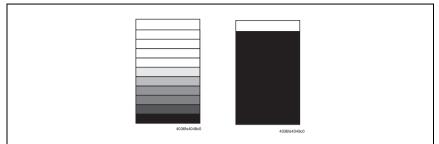
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Adjustment /Setting	The printer is being operated in the climate such as dry or highly humid.	YES	Adjust the image with "TRANS- FER POWER" → SERVICE MENU/ALIGNMENT /TRANSFER POWER/
2	Print unit	Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
3	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
4	Transfer belt	Is the contact on the rail of the transfer belt in good contact with the mating part?	NO	Check or correct contact.
5		Is the terminal dirty?	YES	Clean.
6	Media	Is the media damp?	YES	Replace the media with media that has just been unwrapped.
7	IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr	Is the sensor dirty?	YES	Clean.
8		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7?	NO	Change the print unit. Change the transfer belt. Change the PH unit. Change the IDC sensor board. Change the MFP board. Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2.

16.1.6 Gradation reproduction failure

A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Print unit	Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
2	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
3	IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr	Is the sensor dirty?	YES	Clean.
4		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 3?	NO	Change the print unit. Change the PH unit. Change the IDC sensor board. Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2.

16.1.7 Foggy background

A. Typical faulty Images

ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD
400864000-0

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Adjustment	Adjustment the climate such as dry or highly YES		Adjust the image with "TRANS- FER POWER"
	/Setting	humid.	120	→ SERVICE MENU/ALIGNMENT /TRANSFER POWER/
2		Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
3		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
4	Print unit	Is the connector or contact termi- nal between each print unit and PH unit connected properly?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or reconnect the connector.
5		Is the developing bias contact ter- minal in good contact?	NO	Clean the contact terminal or check the terminal position.
6	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
7	IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr	Is the sensor dirty?	YES	Clean.
8		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7?	NO	Change the PH unit. Change the IDC sensor board.

16.1.8 Poor color reproduction

A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Media	Is the media damp?	YES	Replace the media with media that has just been unwrapped.
2	Transfer belt	Is the terminal dirty?	YES	Clean.
3	IDC sensor board /Re, IDC sensor board /Fr	Is the sensor dirty?	YES	Clean.
4		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 3?	NO	Change the transfer belt. Change the IDC sensor board. Change the MFP board. Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2.

16.1.9 Void areas, white spots

A. Typical faulty images

void a	areas white spots	
4 7 0 4 8 0 4 8 0 4 8 0 4 3 0		ω

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Adjustment Thick or special media	Thick or special media is being	YES	Adjust the image with "TRANS- FER POWER."
	/Setting	used.	120	→ SERVICE MENU/ALIGNMENT /TRANSFER POWER/
2	Print unit	Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
3		Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
4		Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints, oil, or other foreign mat- ter?	YES	Clean.
5	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
6		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
7		Is the ground terminal connected properly?	NO	Correct.
8	Media path	Is there a foreign matter on the media path?	YES	Remove foreign matter.
9	media patri	Is the fusing entrance guide plate dirty or scratched?	YES	Clean or change.
10		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9?	NO	Change the Transfer belt.

16.1.10 Colored spots

A. Typical faulty images

colored spots

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1		Are the spots in a single color?	YES	Change the print unit.
2	Print unit	Are there scratches or lines evi- dent on photo conductor surface?	YES	Change the print unit.
3		Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints, oil, or other foreign mat- ter?	YES	Clean.
4	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
5		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
6	Media path	Is there a foreign matter on the media path?	YES	Remove foreign matter.
7	Fusing unit	Is the fusing roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the fusing unit.
8		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7?	NO	Change the transfer belt.

16.1.11 Blurred image

A. Typical faulty images

blurred image	
ABCDE	
ABCDE	
ABCDE	
ABCDE	
400644031c0	

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	PH unit	Is the window surface dirty?	YES	Clean.
2	Print unit	Is the outside dirty?	YES	Clean.
3		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2?	NO	Change the print unit. Change the PH unit.

16.1.12 Blank copy, black copy

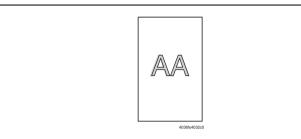
A. Typical faulty images

blank print	black print	
4036fs4038c0	4036fs4039c0	

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Image check	Does a blank print occur?	YES	Check the PH unit connector for proper connection.
2		Is the coupling of the print unit drive mechanism installed prop- erly?	NO	Check or correct drive transmit- ting coupling or change the print unit.
3	Print unit	Is the charge corona voltage con- tact or photo conductor ground contact of the print unit connected properly?	NO	Check, clean, or correct the con- tact.
4	High voltage unit/1, High voltage unit/2	Is the connector corrected prop- erly?	NO	Reconnect.
5		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 4?	NO	Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2. Change the MFP board. Change the PH unit.

16.1.13 Incorrect color image registration

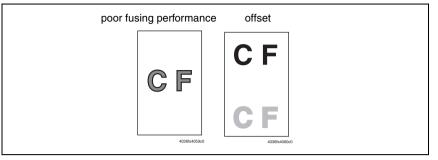
A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1		Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints, oil, or other foreign mat- ter?	YES	Clean.
2	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty or scratched?	YES	Wipe the surface clean of dirt with a soft cloth. Change a scratched transfer belt for a transfer belt.
3		Is the drive coupling to the machine dirty?	YES	Clean.
4		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
5	Print unit	Is the print unit installed in posi- tion?	NO	Reinstall the print unit.
6		Is the photo conductor scratched?	YES	Change the print unit.
7		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6?	NO	Change the transfer belt. Change the PH unit. Change the MFP board.

16.1.14 Poor fusing performance, offset

A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Media	Does the media being used con- form to specifications?	NO	Change the media.
2		Has the problem been eliminated through the check of step 1?	NO	Change the fusing unit. Change the MFP board.

16.1.15 Brush effect, blurred image

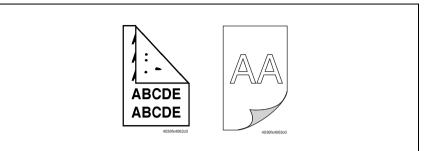
A. Typical faulty images

brush effec	t blurred image
Ç F	ABCDE ABCDE ABCDE ABCDE
4036fs406	31c0 4036fs4031c0

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Media	Is the media damp?	YES	Replace the media with media that has just been unwrapped.
2	Media	Does the media being used con- form to specifications?	NO	Replace the media.
2	3 Fusing Unit Is the fusing entrance guide plat dirty?	Is the fusing entrance guide plate	YES	Clean.
3 Fusir		NO	Change the fusing unit.	

16.1.16 Back marking

A. Typical faulty images



Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Media path	Is there a foreign matter on the media path?	YES	Remove the foreign matter.
2	Eusing unit	Is the fusing entrance guide plate dirty or scratched?	YES	Clean or change.
3	- Fusing unit	Is the fusing roller scratched or dirty?	YES	Change the fusing unit.
4	Transfer belt	Is the transfer belt dirty with fin- gerprints, oil, or other foreign mat- ter?	YES	Clean.
5		Is the transfer roller dirty or scratched?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
6		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5?	NO	Change the Transfer belt. Change the fusing unit. Change high voltage unit /1. Change high voltage unit /2.

16.1.17 Uneven pitch

A. Typical faulty images

41386450700

Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	Toner cartridge	Is the toner cartridge for each color of toner installed in posi- tion?	NO	Reinstall.
2	PH unit	Is the PH unit secured in position with the fixing screw?	NO	Secure it in position.
3	Print unit	Is the drive mechanism of the print unit dirty or damaged?	YES	Clean or change the print unit.
4		Is the photo conductor dirty, scratched, or worn?	YES	Change the print unit.
5	Transfer roller	Are the transfer roller and drive mechanism dirty, scratched, deformed, or worn?	YES	Change the transfer roller.
6	Fusing unit	Are the rollers and drive mecha- nism of the fusing unit dirty, scratched, deformed, or worn?	YES	Change the fusing unit.
7	Driving unit	During color printing, this symp- tom happens with 0.5 mm pitches.	YES	Change the driving unit.
8		Has the problem been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 7?	NO	Change the transfer belt.

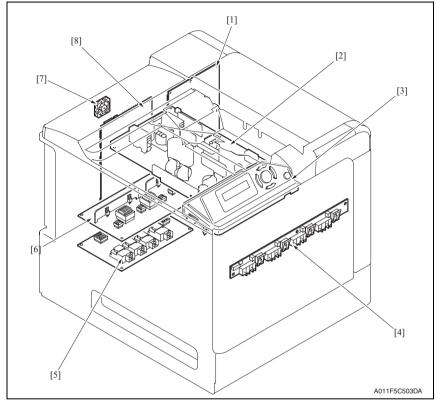
16.1.18 No print cycles can be run as commanded via the network

A. Troubleshooting procedure

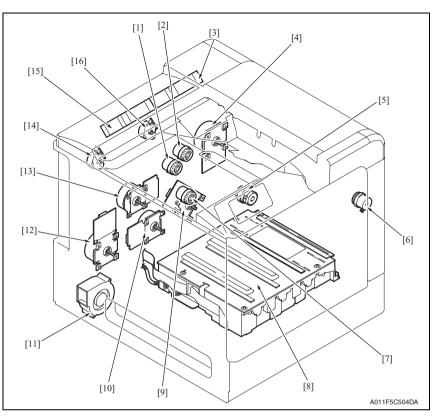
Step	Section	Check item	Result	Action
1	PRCB	Is the ethernet cable connected properly?	NO	Reinstall.
2		Are the network address and other data input correctly?	NO	Retype.
3	Control panel/ MENU	Is the INTERFACE MENU/ETH- ERNET/TCP/IP/SPEED/DUPLEX setting made correctly according to the network environment being used?	NO	Reset.
4	PRCB	Is the PRCB connector con-	NO	Reinstall.
	FROD	nected p	nected properly?	YES

Appendix

- 17. Parts layout drawing
- 17.1 Main body

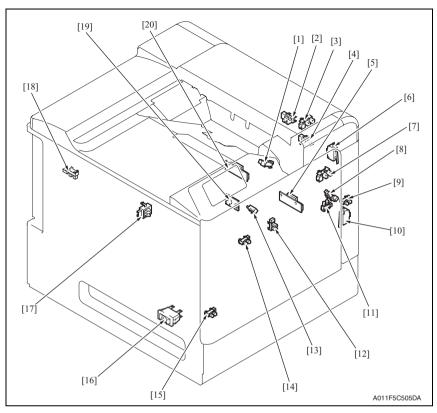


- [1] MFP board (MFPB)
- [2] DC power supply (DCPU)
- [3] Operation board (OB)
- [4] Toner level sensor board (TLSB)
- [5] High voltage unit /2 (HV2)
- [6] High voltage unit /1 (HV1)
- [7] Print control board fan motor (FM5)
- [8] Print control board (PRCB)



- [1] Media feed clutch /1 (CL1)
- [2] Media feed clutch /2 (CL3)
- [3] Fusing fan motor (FM2)
- [4] Fusing motor (M4)
- [5] Registration roller clutch (CL2)
- [6] Pressure/retraction clutch /2 (CL5)
- [7] Pressure/retraction clutch /1 (CL4)
- [8] PH unit

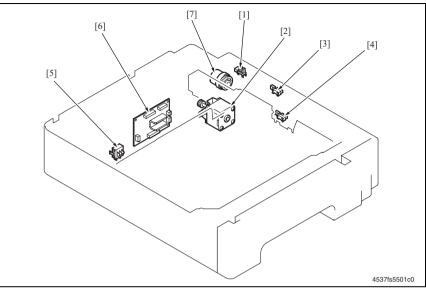
- [9] Intermediate transport motor (M3)
- [10] Developing motor /K (M5)
- [11] Ozone fan motor (FM3)
- [12] Developing motor /Y,M,C (M1)
- [13] Color PC drum motor (M2)
- [14] Toner supply motor /Y,M (M6)
- [15] DC power supply fan motor (FM1)
- [16] Toner supply motor /C,K (M7)



- [1] Media loop sensor (PS6)
- [2] Fusing media size sensor (PS15)
- [3] Media full sensor (PS12)
- [4] Media empty sensor /2 (PS3)
- [5] IDC sensor board /Fr (IDCSB/F)
- [6] Safety switch /Fr (S2)
- [7] Exit sensor (PS8)
- [8] Retraction position Sensor /2 (PS10)
- [9] Door sensor /Rt (PS13)
- [10] Safety switch /Rt (S3)

- [11] Door Sensor /Fr (PS14)
- [12] Registration sensor (PS4)
- [13] OHP sensor (PC7)
- [14] Media empty sensor /1 (PS1)
- [15] Waste toner sensor (PS11)
- [16] Power switch (S1)
- [17] Tray 2 switch (S5)
- [18] Retraction position sensor /1 (PS9)
- [19] Temperature/ humidity sensor (TEM/HUMS)
- [20] IDC sensor board /Re (IDCSB/R)

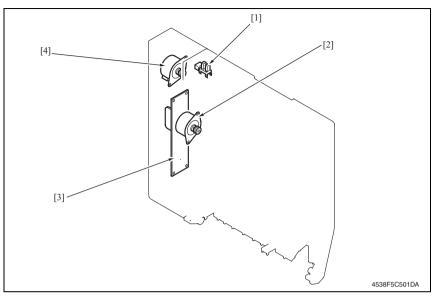
17.2 Lower feeder unit (option)



- [1] Right door switch (MS1)
- [2] Transfer motor (M1)
- [3] Media feed sensor (PS2)
- [4] Media empty sensor (PS1)

- [5] Media size switch (MS2)
- [6] PC control board (PCCB)
- [7] Media feed clutch (CL1)

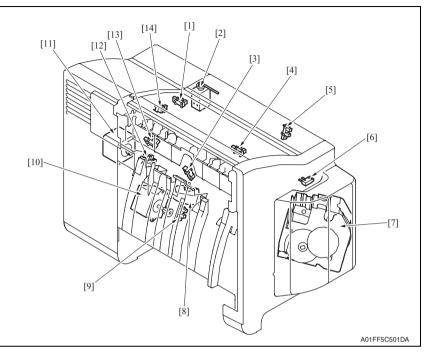
17.3 Duplex option (option)



- [1] Door sensor (PC1)
- [2] Transport motor (M1)

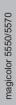
- [3] AD control board (ADCB)
- [4] Reverse motor (M2)

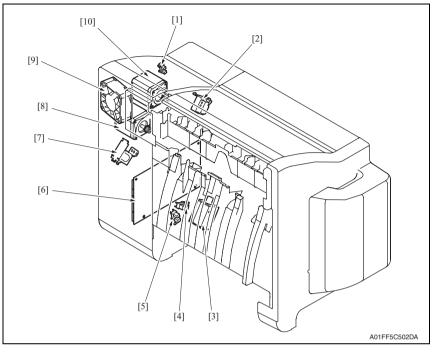
17.4 Staple finisher (option)



- [1] Finisher cover sensor (PS3)
- [2] Entrance solenoid (SL1)
- [3] Media ejector sensor (PS5)
- [4] Transport section sensor (PS2)
- [5] Entrance sensor (PS1)
- [6] Stapler cover switch (MS1)
- [7] Staple unit

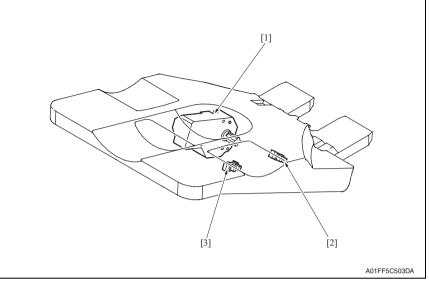
- [8] Align motor (M2)
- [9] Storage section sensor (PS7)
- [10] Media ejector motor (M1)
- [11] Exit roller up/down motor (M5)
- [12] Aligning plate home position sensor (PS6)
- [13] Exit roller sensor (PS8)
- [14] Media full sensor (PS4)





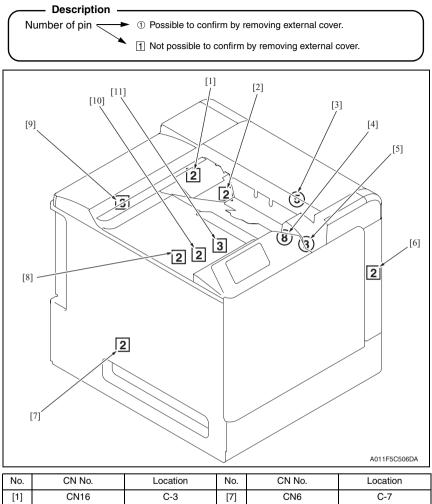
- [1] Aligning belt sensor (PS11)
- [2] Aligning belt up/down solenoid (SL3)
- [3] Media level lever solenoid (SL2)
- [4] Media level sensor/2 (PS10)
- [5] Media level sensor/1 (PS9)

- [6] FS control board (FSCB)
- [7] Paddle solenoid (SL4)
- [8] Exit motor (M4)
- [9] Fan motor (FM1)
- [10] Transport motor (M3)



- [1] Tray up/down motor (M6)
- [3] Tray lower sensor (PS13)
- [2] Tray upper sensor (PS12)

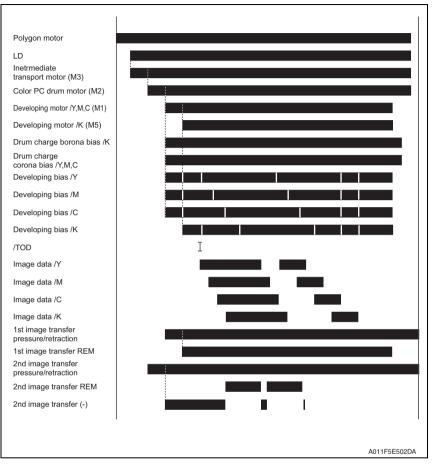
18. Connector layout drawing



[1]	CN16	C-3	[7]	CN6	C-7
[2]	CN26	C-1	[8]	CN12	H-6
[3]	CN15	H-5 to 6	[9]	CN27	C-2
[4]	CN19	H-1 to 2	[10]	CN11	H-6
[5]	CN28	C-2	[11]	CN13	H-6
[6]	CN17	H-7			

19. Timing chart

Color A4 2-print





SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

Lower Feeder Unit

2006.11 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2006/11	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

Lower Feeder Unit

General

1.	Product specifications	1
1.	1 Toduct specifications	•

Maintenance

2.	Perio	dic check	3
2.1	Mai	ntenance procedure (periodic parts check)	3
2.	1.1	Replacing the feed roller	3
3.	Other	r	4
3.1	Disa	assembly/adjustment-prohibited items	4
3.2	Disa	assembly/assembly list (other parts)	5
3.3	Disa	assembly/assembly procedure	6
3.	3.1	Tray	6
3.	3.2	PC control board (PCCB)	6
3.	3.3	Media feed clutch (CL1)	8
3.	3.4	Transport motor (M1)	. 10
3.4	Clea	aning procedure	. 11
3.	4.1	Feed roller	. 11

Adjustment/Setting

4.	How to use the adjustment section	13
5.	Mechanical adjustment	14
5.1	Registration adjustment	14

Troubleshooting

6.	Jam	n display	15
6.1	Mi	isfeed display	15
6.2	Mi	isfeed display resetting procedure	15
6.3	Se	ensor layout	16
6.4	Sc	olution	17
6.4	4.1	Initial check items	17
6.4	1.2	Misfeed at the tray 3/ tray 4 media feed section	18
6.4	1.3	Misfeed at the tray 3/ tray 4 vertical transport section	19

Blank Page

General

1. Product specifications

А. Туре

Name	Add-on 500-sheet media feed cassette
Туре	Front-loading type
Installation	Desk type
Media feeding system	Media separation by a small-diameter roller with torque limiter
Document Alignment	Center

B. Media type

Media size	B5S(JIS)/Executive/LetterS/A4S/Letter Plus/G-Legal/Legal
Media type	 Plain paper: 60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb) Recycled paper: 60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb)
Capacity	500 sheets

C. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 24 V ± 10% (supplied from the main body)
	DC 5 V ± 5%
Max. Power Con- sumption	16 W
Dimensions	448 mm (W) × 520 mm (D) × 111.5 mm (H) 17.6 inch (W) × 4.4 inch (D) × 20.5 inch (H)
Weight	Approx. 6.5 kg (14.25 lb)

D. Operating environment

Temperature	10° to 30° C/50° to 95° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C/h (18° F/h))
Humidity	15% to 85% (with a fluctuation of 20%/h)

NOTE

• These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Blank Page

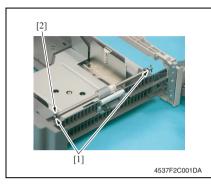
Maintenance

Maintenance

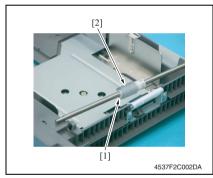
2. Periodic check

2.1 Maintenance procedure (periodic parts check)

2.1.1 Replacing the feed roller



- 1. Slide out tray 1.
- 2. Lock the media lift plate.
- 3. Snap off two C-clips [1] and the bearing [2] at the front.



4. Snap off the C-clip [1] and remove the feed roller [2].

З

3. Other

3.1 Disassembly/adjustment-prohibited items

- A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied
- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.
- B. Red-painted screws
- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.
- C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

• Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

D. Removal of PWBs

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

3.2 Disassembly/assembly list (other parts)

A. Disassembly/assembly parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Tray	P.6
2	Board and etc.	PC control board (PCCB)	P.6
3	Others	Media feed clutch (CL1)	P.8
4	Guleis	Transport motor (M1)	P.10

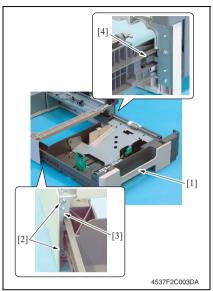
B. Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Media feed section	Feed roller	P.11

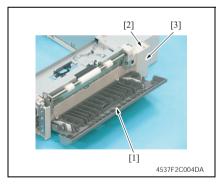
3. Other

3.3 Disassembly/assembly procedure

3.3.1 Tray



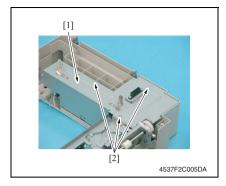
3.3.2 PC control board (PCCB)

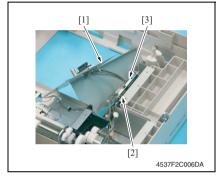


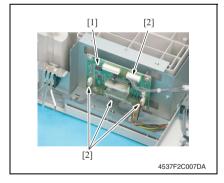
- 1. Slide out the tray [1].
- 2. Remove two screws [2], and remove the stopper [3].
- 3. Pressing the tab [4], remove the tray [1].

- 1. Remove the lower feeder unit from the machine.
- 2. Slide out the tray.
- 3. Open the lower feeder unit right door [1].
- 4. Remove screw [2] and the gear cover [3].

6



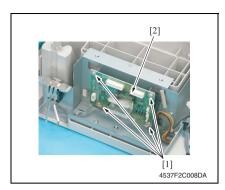




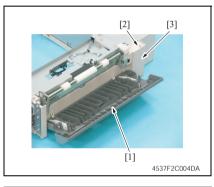
5. Remove three screws [2] from the PWB protective cover [1].

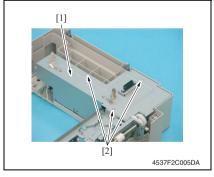
- Slightly raise the PWB protective cover [1] and, at the same time, disconnect the connector [3] from the PC control board [2].
- 7. Remove the PWB protective cover [1].

8. Disconnect all connectors [2] from the PC control board [1].



3.3.3 Media feed clutch (CL1)



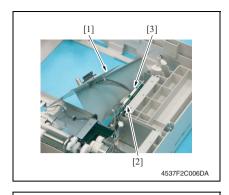


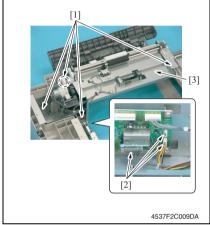
9. Remove four screws [1] and the PC control board [2].

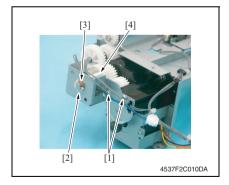
- 1. Remove the lower feeder unit from the machine.
- 2. Slide out the tray.
- 3. Open the lower feeder unit right door [1].
- 4. Remove screw [2] and the gear cover [3].

5. Remove three screws [2] from the PWB protective cover [1].

Maintenance



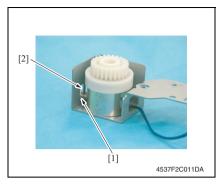




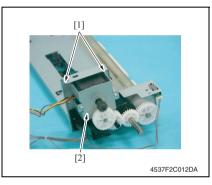
- Slightly raise the PWB protective cover [1] and, at the same time, disconnect the connector [3] from the PC control board [2].
- 7. Remove the PWB protective cover [1].

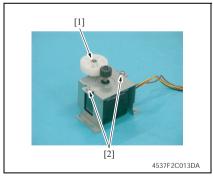
8. Remove four screws [1], disconnect three connectors [2], and remove the media feed drive assy [3].

 Remove two screws [1], snap off the C-clip [2] and bearing [3], and remove the media feed clutch [4].



3.3.4 Transport motor (M1)





NOTE

• When reinstalling the media feed clutch, make sure that the protrusion [1] on the media feed clutch fits into the locking slot [2].

1. Remove the media feed drive assy and media feed clutch.

See P.8

2. Remove two screws [1] and the transport motor assy [2].

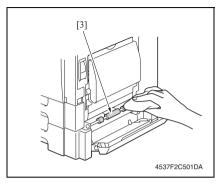
- 3. Remove the gear [1].
- 4. Remove two screws [2] and the transport motor.

3.4 Cleaning procedure

NOTE

• The alcohol used in this cleaning procedure is isopropyl alcohol.

3.4.1 Feed roller



- 1. Open the lower feeder unit right door.
- Wipe the feed roller [1] clean of dirt using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol.

3. Other

Lower Feeder Unit

Blank Page

Adjustment/Setting

4. How to use the adjustment section

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting" the default settings are indicated by " "

A. Advance checks

- Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made.Check to see if:
- 1. The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- 2. The power supply is properly grounded.
- 3. The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- 4. The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- 5. The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- 6. The density is properly selected.
- 7. The original glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- 8. Correct media is being used for printing.
- 9. The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- 10. Toner is not running out.

B. Precautions for service jobs

- 1. Be sure to unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.
- 2. Special care should be used when handling the fusing unit which can be extremely hot.
- 3. The developing unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.
- 4. Take care not to damage the PC drum with a tool or similar device.
- 5. Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.

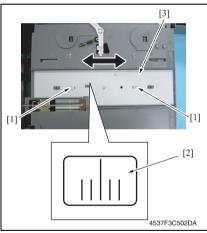
5. Mechanical adjustment

5.1 Registration adjustment

This adjustment must be made if:

• The printed image deviates in the CD direction.





- 1. Remove the tray.
- 2. Loosen two screws [1].

- 3. Loosen two screws [1].
- Watching the graduations [2] on the adjusting plate, move the edge guide plate [3] as necessary.

Adjustment range: \pm 2.0 mm

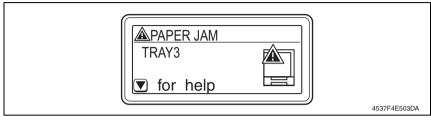
5. Tighten the four screws that have been loosened and mount the tray.

Troubleshooting

6. Jam display

6.1 Misfeed display

• When a media misfeed occurs, a message is displayed on the control panel.



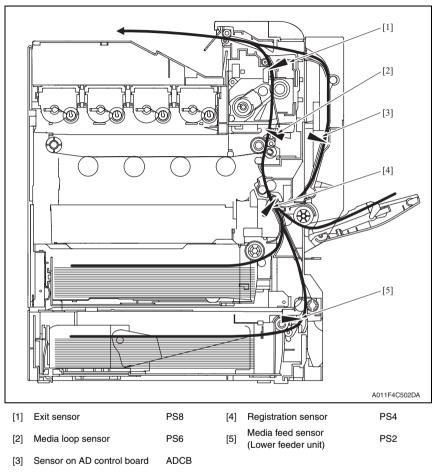
Display		Misfeed location	Misfeed clearing	Ref. page
LCD1	LCD2	Wisieed location	location	nei. page
PAPER	TRAY 3	 Tray 3 media feed section 	Tray 3	P.18
JAM	INAL 3	 Vertical transport section 	Tray 3 right door	P.19
PAPER	TBAY 4	Tray 4 media feed section	Tray 4	P.18
JAM	INAL4	 Vertical transport section 	Tray 4 right door	P.19

6.2 Misfeed display resetting procedure

• Open the relevant door, clear the sheet of misfed media, and close the door.

6.3 Sensor layout

• For a system equipped with a lower feeder unit and a duplex option.



Lower Feeder Unit

6.4 Solution

6.4.1 Initial check items

• When a media misfeed occurs, first check the following initial check items.

Check Item	Action
Does the media meet product specifications?	Change the media.
Is the media curled, wavy, or damp.	Change the media. Instruct the user in correct media storage requirements.
Is a foreign object present along the media path, or is the media path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the media path.
Are the Media Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective Media Separa- tor Finger.
Are the rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the cor- rect position to accommodate media?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

6.4.2 Misfeed at the tray 3/ tray 4 media feed section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
	The media does not block the media feed sensor (PS2) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media feed clutch (CL1) has turned ON.
lott at tray 3/ tray /	The media feed sensor (PS2) is not blocked when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts		
Media feed sensor (PS2) Media feed clutch (CL1)	PC control board (PCCB) MFP control board (MFPB)	
Transport motor (M1)		

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Com- ponent)	
1	Initial check items	_	—	
2	PS2 sensor check	PCCB PJ5PCCB-6 (ON)	B to C-4	
3	CL1 operation check	PCCB PJ6PCCB-2 (REM)	B to C-5	
4	M1 operation check	PCCB PJ3PCCB-1 to 4	B to C-5	
5	Change PCCB.	_	—	
6	Change MFPB.	—	—	

6.4.3 Misfeed at the tray 3/ tray 4 vertical transport section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Detection of mis- feed at tray 3	The media does not block the registration sensor (PS4) even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has blocked the media feed sensor (PS2).
vertical transport section	The media does not unblock the media feed sensor (PS2) even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has blocked the media feed sensor (PS2).
Detection of mis- feed at tray 4	The media does not block the media feed sensor (PS2) of tray 3 even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has blocked the media feed sensor (PS2).
vertical transport section	The media does not unblock the media feed sensor (PS2) even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has blocked the media feed sensor (PS2).

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts		
Media feed sensor (PS2) Registration sensor (PS4) Transport motor (M1)	PC control board (PCCB) MFP control board (MFPB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Com- ponent)	
1	Initial check items	_	—	
2	PS2 sensor check	PCCB PJ5PCCB-6 (ON)	B to C-4	
3	PS4 sensor check	MFPB PJ15MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3 (main body)	
4	M1 operation check	PCCB PJ3PCCB-1 to 4	B to C-5	
5	Change PCCB.	_	_	
6	Change MFPB.	_	—	

Blank Page



SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

Duplex Option

2006.11 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2006/11	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

Duplex Option

General

1.	Product specifications	1
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Maintenance

2.	Other		3
2.1	Disa	assembly/adjustment-prohibited items	3
2.2	Disa	assembly/assembly list (other parts)	4
2.2	2.1	Disassembly/assembly parts list	4
2.2	2.2	Cleaning parts list	4
2.3	Disa	assembly/assembly procedure	5
2.3	3.1	Duplex option	5
2.3	3.2	Right cover	6
2.3	3.3	AD control board (ADCB)	6
2.3	3.4	Transport motor (M1)	7
2.3	3.5	Reverse motor (M2)	7
2.4	Clea	aning procedure	7
2.4	4.1	Transport roller	7

Troubleshooting

3.	Jam o	display	9	
3.1	Mis	feed display	9	
3.2	Mis	feed display resetting procedure	9	
3.3	3 Sensor layout			
3.4	Solu	ution	.11	
3.4	4.1	Initial check items	.11	
3.4	1.2	Misfeed at duplex option media transport section	12	
3.4	1.3	Misfeed at duplex option media feed section	. 13	

Blank Page

General

1. Product specifications

А. Туре

Name	Duplex unit
Туре	Switchback and circulating duplex unit
Installation	Mounted on the right side door of main body
Reversing system	Exit roller switchback
Tracfer system	Rubber roller + driven rolls
Document alignment	Center

B. Media type

Media size	B5/A4S/LetterS/Legal	
Media type	 Plain paper: 60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb) Recycled paper: 60 to 90 g/m² (16 to 24 lb) 	

C. Machine specifications

Power requirements DC 24 V \pm 10% (supplied from the main body)	
	DC 5 V \pm 5% (supplied from the main body)
Max. power consumption	35 W
Dimensions	394 mm (W) × 320 mm (D) × 58 mm (H) 15.5 inch (W) × 12.6 inch (D) × 2.3 inch (H)
Weight	Approx. 1.8 kg (4.0 lb)

D. Operating environment

Temperature	10° C to 30° C/50° F to 86° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C/h (18° F/h))
Humidity	15% to 85% (with a fluctuation of 20%/h)

NOTE

• These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Blank Page

Maintenance

2. Other

2.1 Disassembly/adjustment-prohibited items

- A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied
- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.
- B. Red-painted screws
- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.
- C. Variable resistors on board

NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.
- D. Removal of PWBs

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

2.2 Disassembly/assembly list (other parts)

2.2.1 Disassembly/assembly parts list

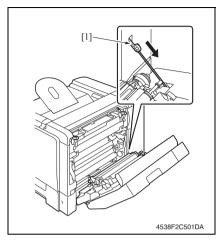
No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	-	Duplex option	P.5
2	Exterior parts	Right cover	P.6
3	Board and etc.	AD control board (ADCB)	P.6
4	Others	Transport motor (M1)	P.7
5	Oulers	Reverse motor (M2)	P.7

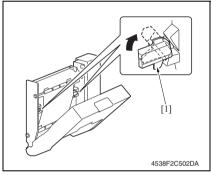
2.2.2 Cleaning parts list

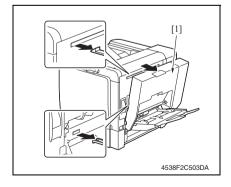
No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Tranport section	on Transport roller	

2.3 Disassembly/assembly procedure

2.3.1 Duplex option







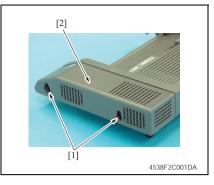
- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Remove the support wire [1] from the machine.
- 3. Close the right door.

Duplex Option

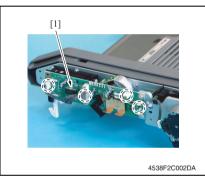
- 4. Open the duplex option door.
- 5. Turn the two locking knobs [1] to unlock the duplex option.

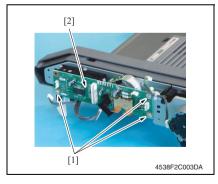
6. Remove the duplex option [1].

2.3.2 Right cover



2.3.3 AD control board (ADCB)





1. Remove the duplex option.

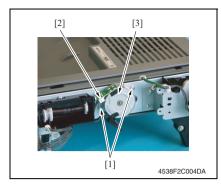
See P.5

2. Remove two screws [1] and the right cover [2].

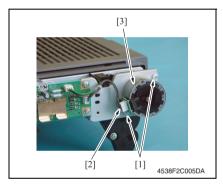
- 1. Remove the right cover. See P.6
- 2. Disconnect all connectors from the AD control board [1].

3. Remove three screws [1] and the AD control board [2].

2.3.4 Transport motor (M1)



2.3.5 Reverse motor (M2)

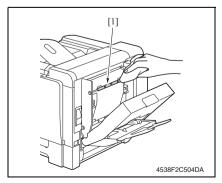


2.4 Cleaning procedure

NOTE

• The alcohol used in this cleaning procedure is isopropyl alcohol.

2.4.1 Transport roller



- 1. Open the duplex door.
- 2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the transport roller [1] clean of dirt.

1. Remove the AD control board.

See P.6

2. Remove two screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the transport motor [3].

1. Remove the right cover. See P.6

2. Remove two screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the reverse motor [3].

Duplex Option

Duplex Option

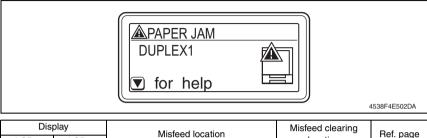
Blank Page

Troubleshooting

3. Jam display

3.1 Misfeed display

• When a media misfeed occurs, a message is displayed on the Control Panel.



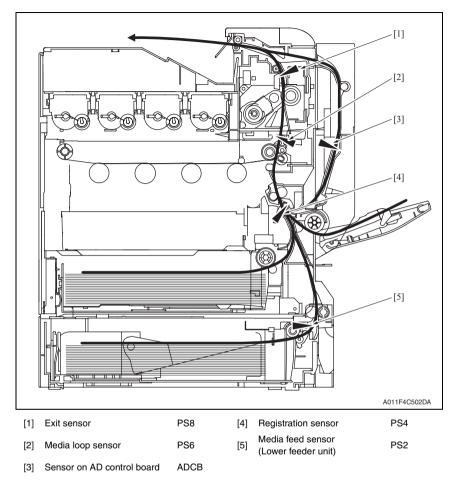
DI	spiay	Misfeed location	Misfeed clearing location	Ref. page
LCD1	LCD2	Misieed location		nei. page
PAPER JAM	DUPLEX 1	Duplex option media tranport section	Duplex option door	P.13
PAPER JAM	DUPLEX 2	Duplex option media feed section		P.12

3.2 Misfeed display resetting procedure

• Open the relevant door, clear the sheet of misfed media, and close the door.

Duplex Option

3.3 Sensor layout



3.4 Solution

3.4.1 Initial check items

• When a media misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items.

Check Item	Action
Does media meet product specifications?	Change media.
Is media curled, wavy, or damp.	Change media. Instruct user in correct media storage.
Is a foreign object present along the media path, or is the media path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the media path.
Are the Media Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective Media Separa- tor Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at correct position to accommodate media?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

Duplex Option

3.4.2 Misfeed at duplex option media transport section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Detection of mis- feed at duplex	The sensor on the AD control board (ADCB) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been unblocked.
option media trans- port section	The media does not unblock the registration sensor (PS4) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the sensor on the AD control board (ADCB) has been unblocked.
Detection of media left at duplex option media transport section	The sensor on the AD control board (ADCB) is unblocked when the main power switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or mal- function is reset.

B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts		
	AD control board (ADCB) MFP control board (MFPB)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control Signal	Location (Electrical Com- ponent)	
1	Initial check items	_		
2	Sensor check on the (ADCB)	ADCB PJ1ADCB-12	D-3 to 4	
3	M1 operation check	ADCB PJ2ADCB-1 to 4	C-4 to 5	
4	M2 operation check	ADCB PJ3ADCB-1 to 4	F to G-4	
5	Change ADCB.	—	_	
6	Change MFPB.		_	

3.4.3 Misfeed at duplex option media feed section

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Detection of mis- feed at duplex option media feed section	The media does not unblock the registration sensor (PS4) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the media feed sequence has been started at the duplex option.

B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Registration sensor (PS4)	AD control board (ADCB)	
Transport motor (M1)	MFP control board (MFPB)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control Signal	Location (Electrical Com- ponent)	
1	Initial check items	_	—	
2	PS4 sensor check	MFPB PJ15MFPB-3 (ON)	C-3 (main body)	
3	M1 operation check	ADCB PJ2ADCB-1 to 4	C-4 to 5	
4	Change ADCB.	_	—	
5	Change MFPB.	_	—	

Duplex Option

Blank Page



SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

Staple Finisher

2006.11 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2006/11	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

Staple Finisher

General

1.	Product specifications	1

Maintenance

2. Othe	r5
2.1 Dis	assembly/adjustment prohibited items5
2.2 Dis	assembly/Assembly list (Other parts)6
2.2.1	Disassembly/Assembly parts list6
2.3 Dis	assembly/Assembly procedure7
2.3.1	Front cover7
2.3.2	Rear cover8
2.3.3	Carry-in entrance upper cover8
2.3.4	Right metal plate cover8
2.3.5	Sub tray9
2.3.6	Main tray9
2.3.7	Stapling unit
2.3.8	Relay unit
2.3.9	Staple finisher
2.3.10	FS control board
2.3.11	Tray up/down motor assy14
2.3.12	Fan motor
2.3.13	Transport motor
2.3.14	Exit motor
2.3.15	Exit roller up/down motor
2.3.16	Entrance solenoid

Troubleshooting

3.	Jam c	lisplay	21
3.1	Misf	eed display	21
3.1	.1	Misfeed display resetting procedure	21
3.2	Sen	sor layout	22
3.3	Solu	ition	23
3.3	3.1	Initial check items	23
3.3	3.2	Staple misfeed	23

	3.3.3	Horizontal transport section misfeed	24
	3.3.4	Finisher transport section misfeed	24
	3.3.5	Sub tray section misfeed	25
	3.3.6	Main tray section misfeed	26
4.	Error	codes	27
4	.1 Trou	ble code list (Service call)	27
4	.2 Solu	ition	28
	4.2.1	0B30: Aligning plate drive malfunction	28
	4.2.2	0B47: Media holding drive malfunction	28
	4.2.3	0B48: Exit roller pressure/retraction malfunction	29
	4.2.4	0B4A: Aligning belt pressure/retraction malfunction	29
	4.2.5	0B4C: Media ejector motor malfunction	30
	4.2.6	0BA0: Tray up/down motor ascent/descent drive malfunction	30
	4.2.7	0BE1: Fan motor malfunction	31
	4.2.8	133B: Communication malfunction	31
	4.2.9	3FFB: Flash ROM malfunction	31

General

1. Product specifications

А. Туре

Туре	Staple finisher suspended on the main body
Installation	Suspended on the main body
Document alignment	Center
Media ejection system	Face down, Output from the back end
Consumables	Staples

B. Functions

Modes	Sub tray	Sort, group
	Main tray	Sort, group, Sort offset, group offset, Sort stable

C. Media type

(1) Non sort, sort, group

Туре	Size	Weight	Max. Capacity (Sub tray, Main tray)		
туре			8-1/2 x 11S, A4S or less	Media length: longer than 300 mm	
Plain paper Recycled paper		60 to 90 g/m ² 16 to 24 lb	Sub: 100 sheets Main: 500 sheets	Sub: 50 sheets Main: 250 sheets	
Postcard		-			
Envelope	A6S, A5S, B5S, A4S	-			
OHP Film	5-1/ ₂ x 8-1/ ₂ S, 8-1/ ₂ x 11S, 8-1/ ₂ x 14	-			
Glossy paper	-	-			
Label	Max.: 216 mm x 356 mm 8.5 x 14 inch	-	Sub: 20 sheets	Sub: 20 sheets	
Letterhead	Min.: 92 mm x 148 mm 3.5 x 5.75 inch	-	Main: 20 sheets	Main: 20 sheets	
Thick paper 1		91 to 150 g/m ² 24.25 to 40 lb			
Thick paper 2		151 to 210 g/m ² 40.25 to 55.75 lb			

(2) Sort offset, group offset

Tupo	Size	Weight	Max. Capacity (Main tray)		
Type Size		weight	8-1/ ₂ x 11S, A4S or less	Media length: longer than 300 mm	
Plain paper Recycled paper	B5S, A4S 8- ¹ / ₂ x 11S, 8- ¹ / ₂ x 14 Max.: 216 mm x 356 mm 8.5 x 14 inch Min.: 182 mm x 257 mm 7.25 x 10 inch	60 to 90 g/m² 16 to 24 lb	500 sheets or 50 sets	250 sheets or 25 sets	

(3) Sort stable

<Normal mode>

				apacity h tray)	No. of
Туре	Size	Weight	8-1/ ₂ x 11S, A4S or less	Media length: longer than 300 mm	sheets to be stapled
Plain paper Recycled pape	B5S, A4S 8- ¹ / ₂ x 11S, 8- ¹ / ₂ x 14 Max.: 216 mm x 356 mm 8.5 x 14 inch Min.: 182 mm x 257 mm 7.25 x 10 inch	60 to 90 g/m² 16 to 24 lb	400 sheets or 40 sets	200 sheets or 20 sets	30 sheets *

*: The number of sheets to be stapled is limited for high-density images. (Color wise 3: 20 sheets x 20 sets)

<Cover mode>

				apacity ı tray)	No. of
Туре	Size	Weight	8-¹/₂ x 11S, A4S or less	Media length: longer than 300 mm	sheets to be stapled
Plain paper Recycled paper	B5S, A4S 8-1/ ₂ x 11S, 8-1/ ₂ x 14 Max.: 216 mm x 356 mm 8.5 x 14 inch Min.: 182 mm x 257 mm 7.25 x 10 inch	60 to 210 g/m² 16 to 55.75 lb	_	_	28 sheets (2 sheets or less for thick paper)

D. Stapling

Staple filling mode	Dedicated Staple Cartridge (5000 staples)	
Staple detection	Available (Near empty: 20 remaining staples)	
Stapling position	Rear corner (49 degrees)	
Media size	B5S, A4S, 8-1/2 x 11S, 8-1/2 x 14	
Manual staple	None	

E. Machine specifications

Power requirements	DC 24 V \pm 10% (supplied from the main body)	
Max. power consumption	48 W or less	
Dimensions	Stapling unit: 475 (W) × 462 (D) × 360 (H) mm 18.75 (W) × 18.25 (H) × 14.25 (D) inch Relay unit: 284 (W) × 394 (D) × 360 (H) mm 11.0 (W) × 15.5 (D) × 14.0 (D) inch	
Stapling unit: 10.0 kg (22 lb) Weight Relay unit: 2.0 kg (4.5 lb) (Excluding items furnished with the unit.)		

F. Operating environment

• Conforms to the operating environment of the main body.

NOTE

• These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Blank Page

Maintenance

2. Other

2.1 Disassembly/adjustment prohibited items

- A. Black-painted screws
- Do not remove or loosen any of the black-painted screws in the field. Any of such screws that has been removed calls for readjustment at reinstallation.
- B. Red-painted screws
- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.
- C. Variable Resistors on Board

NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.
- D. Removal of PWBs

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

2.2 Disassembly/Assembly list (Other parts)

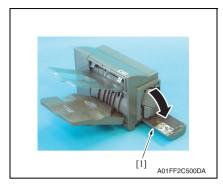
2.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

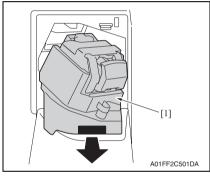
No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1		Front cover	P.7
2		Rear cover	P.8
3	Exterior ports	Carry-in entrance upper cover	P.8
4	Exterior parts	Right metal plate cover	P.8
5		Sub tray	P.9
6		Main tray	P.9
7		Stapling unit	P.10
8	Unit	Relay unit	P.11
9		Staple finisher	P.12
10	Board and etc.	FS control board	P.13
11		Tray up/down motor assy	P.14
12		Fan motor	P.15
13	Others	Transport motor	P.15
14		Exit motor	P.17
15	1	Exit roller up/down motor	P.18
16	1	Entrance solenoid	P.19

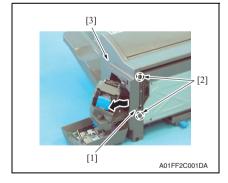
Staple Finisher

2.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

2.3.1 Front cover





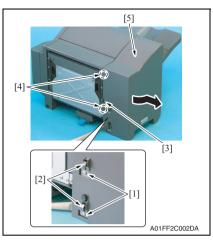


- 1. Remove the staple finisher. See P.12
- 2. Open the staple cover. [1].

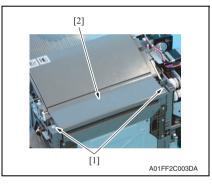
3. Pull out the stapling unit [1].

- 4. Remove the screw [1].
- 5. Unhook the two tabs [2] and remove the front cover [3].

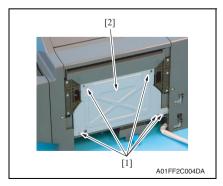
2.3.2 Rear cover



2.3.3 Carry-in entrance upper cover



2.3.4 Right metal plate cover



1. Remove the staple finisher.

See P.12

- 2. Remove two screws [1] and remove two earth metal plates [2].
- 3. Remove the screw [3].
- 4. Unhook the two tabs [4] and remove the rear cover [5].

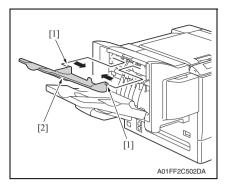
- 1. Remove the front cover.
- See P.7
- 2. Remove the rear cover.

See P.8

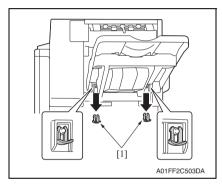
3. Remove two screws [1] and remove the carry-in entrance upper cover [2].

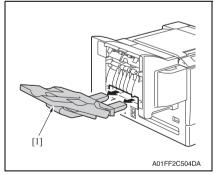
1. Remove five screws [1] and remove the right metal plate cover [2].

2.3.5 Sub tray



2.3.6 Main tray





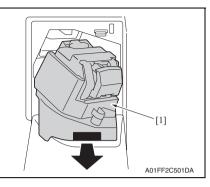
1. Hold the two tabs [1] and remove the sub tray [2].

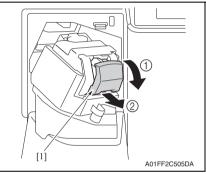
1. Remove two clips [1].

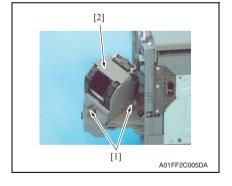
2. Remove the main tray [1].

2. Other

2.3.7 Stapling unit



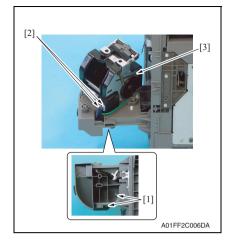




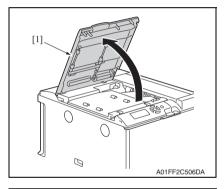
- 1. Remove the front cover.
- See P.7
- 2. Pull out the stapling unit [1].

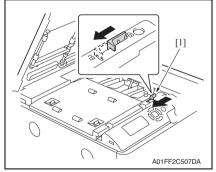
3. Remove the stapler [1].

4. Remove two screws [1] and remove the stapling unit cover [2].



2.3.8 Relay unit

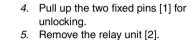




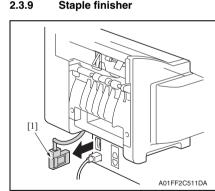
 Remove two screws [1], disconnect two connector [2] and remove the stapling unit [3].

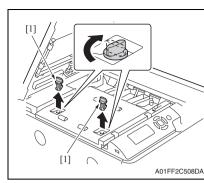
1. Open the relay unit cover [1].

2. Unlock the relay unit lever [1].



- R [1] (A01FF2C509DA 2.3.9 Staple finisher
- 1. Disconnect the connector [1] from the main body.

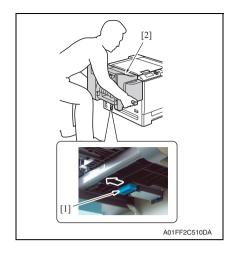






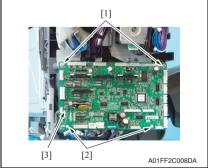
[2]

Staple Finisher



2.3.10 FS control board





staple finisher [2].

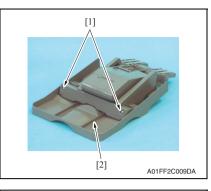
Staple Finisher

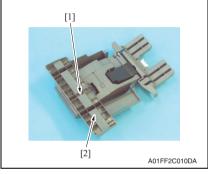
2. Pull the lever [1] and remove the

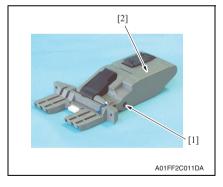
- 1. Remove the rear cover. See P.8
- 2. Remove all 23 connectors on the FS control board.

3. Remove two screws [1], remove two card spacers [2], and remove the FS control board [3].

2.3.11 Tray up/down motor assy







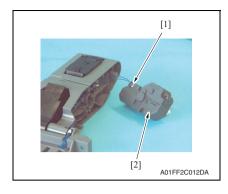
1. Remove the main tray.

See P.9

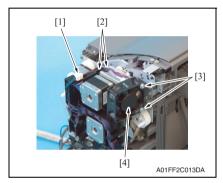
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the output tray [2].

3. Remove the screw [1] and remove the output tray fixing cover [2].

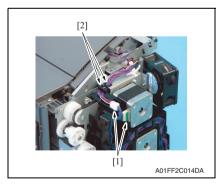
4. Remove the screw [1] and remove the tray up/down motor cover [2].



2.3.12 Fan motor



2.3.13 Transport motor



 Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the tray up/down motor assy [2].

Maintenance

Staple Finisher

1. Remove the rear cover.

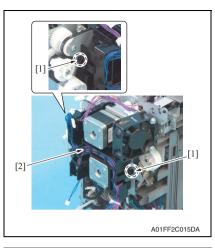
See P.8

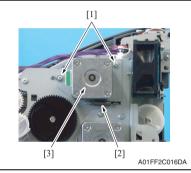
- 2. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove two wire saddles [2].
- 3. Remove two screws [3] and remove the fan motor [4].

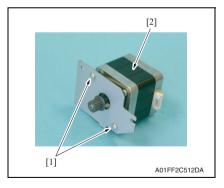
1. Remove the rear cover. See P.8

2. Remove the FS control board. See P.13

- 3. Remove two screws [1].
- 4. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [2].







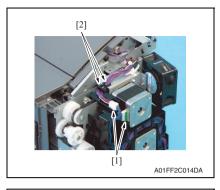
 Hold down and unhook the two tabs [1] and remove the harness guide [2].

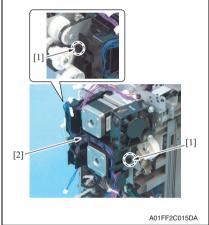
 Remove two screws[1], spring [2] and remove the transport motor assy [3].

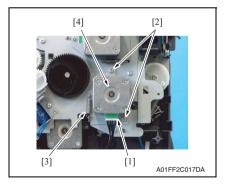
NOTE

- To reinstall the transport motor assy, hook the spring first and screw the transport motor assy while the spring is stretched to a certain degree.
- 7. Remove two screws[1] and remove the transport motor [2].

2.3.14 Exit motor







1. Remove the rear cover. See P.8

2. Remove the FS control board. See P.13

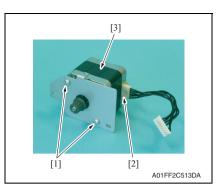
- 3. Disconnect two connector [1].
- 4. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [2].

 Hold down and unhook the two tabs [1] and remove the harness guide [2]. Staple Finisher

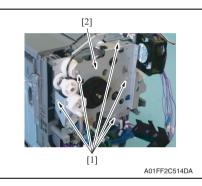
- 6. Disconnect the connector [1].
- Remove two screws [2], spring [3] and remove the exit motor assy [4].

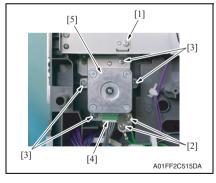
NOTE

• To reinstall the exit motor assy, hook the spring first and screw the exit motor assy while the spring is stretched to a certain degree.



2.3.15 Exit roller up/down motor





Remove two screws [1], connector
 [2] and remove the exit motor [3].

1. Remove the rear cover.

See P.8

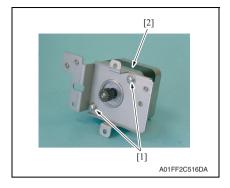
2. Remove the FS control board. See P.13

3. Remove the Transport motor assy. See P.15

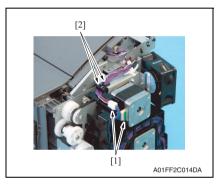
4. Remove the exit motor assy.

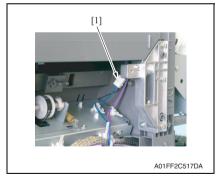
See P.17

- 5. Remove five screws [1] and remove the mounting metal plate assy [2].
- 6. Loosen the screw [1].
- 7. Remove two screws [2] and remove earth wire.
- Remove four screws [3], disconnect the connector [4] and remove the exit roller up/down motor assy [5].



2.3.16 Entrance solenoid





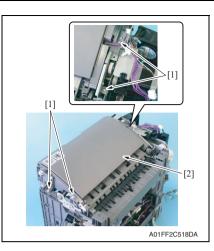
9. Remove two screws [1] and remove the exit roller up/down motor [2].

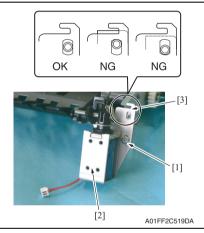
1. Remove the front cover.

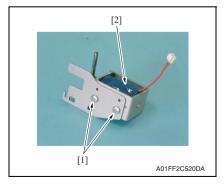
See P.7

- 2. Remove the rear cover. See P.8
- 3. Disconnect two connector [1].
- 4. Remove the harness from the wire saddle [2].

- *5.* Remove the right metal plate cover. See P.8
- 6. Disconnect the connector [1].







7. Remove the carry-in entrance upper cover.

See P.8

8. Remove four screws [1] and remove the carry-in entrance upper assy [2].

9. Remove the screw [1] and remove the entrance solenoid assy [2].

NOTE

• To reinstall the entrance solenoid assy, the side of the mounting plate [3] needs to be aligned.

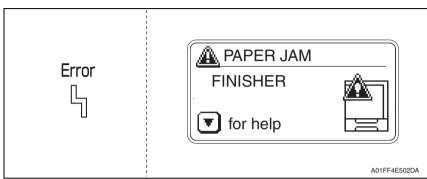
10. Remove two screws [1] and remove the entrance solenoid [2].

Troubleshooting

3. Jam display

3.1 Misfeed display

• When a media misfeed occurs, the printer shows the corresponding media misfeed status by means of the Error indicator on the control panel or LCD display.

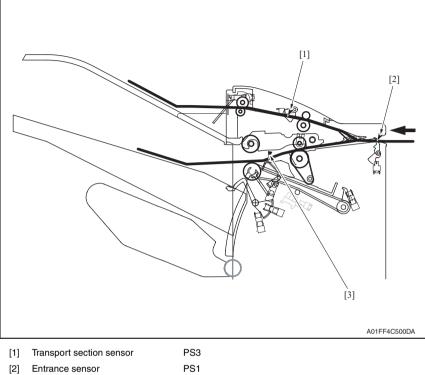


Display		Misfeed location	Misfeed processing	Action
LCD 1	LCD 2	Misiced location	location	Action
	STAPLER	Staple misfeed	Staple cover	P.23
	UPPER TRANS	Horizontal transport section	Relay unit cover	P.24
PAPER JAM	FINISHER	Finisher transport section	Relay unit cover Finisher cover	P.24
	SUB EXIT	Sub tray section	Relay unit cover Finisher cover	P.25
	MAIN EXIT	Main tray section	Relay unit cover Finisher cover	P.26

3.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

• Open the relevant door, clear the sheet of misfed media, and close the door.

3.2 Sensor layout



3.3 Solution

3.3.1 Initial check items

• When a media misfeed occurs, first check the following initial check items.

Check Item	Action
Does the media meet product specifications?	Change the media.
Is media curled, wavy, or damp.	Change the media. Instruct the user in correct media storage.
Is a foreign object present along the media path, or is the media path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the media path.
Are the rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the edge guide and trailing edge stop at the correct position to accommodate the media?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators found operational when checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

3.3.2 Staple misfeed

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
	The stapler does not return to the home position even after the set of time has elapsed after the staple motor starts to drive based on normal rotation.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Stapling unit FS control board (FSCB)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the initial check items.	-	-
2	Stapling Unit replacement	-	-
3	FSCB replacement	-	-

3.3.3 Horizontal transport section misfeed

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
	The entrance sensor (PS1) is not unblocked even after the set of time has elapsed after the main body exit sensor (PS8) is blocked.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Exit sensor (PS8) Entrance sensor (PS1)	FS control board (FSCB)

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the initial check items.	-	-
2	PS8 I/O, sensor check	MFPB PJ4MFPB-6 (ON)	I-2
3	PS1 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN10FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4
4	FSCB replacement	-	-

3.3.4 Finisher transport section misfeed

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Detection of media left in finisher transport section	The entrance sensor (PS1) is unblocked when the main switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The storage section sensor (PS7) is blocked when the main switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Entrance sensor (PS1)	FS control board (FSCB)
Storage section sensor (PS7)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step		Control signal	Location (Electrical component)	
1	Check the initial check items.	-	-	
2	PS1 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN10FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4	
3	PS7 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN9FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4	
4	FSCB replacement	-	-	

3.3.5 Sub tray section misfeed

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Sub tray section misfeed	The transport section sensor (PS2) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the entrance sensor (PS1) has been unblocked by the media.
detection	The transport section sensor (PS2) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the entrance sensor (PS1) has been blocked by the media.
Detection of media left in sub tray section	The transport section sensor (PS2) is unblocked when the main switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Entrance sensor (PS1) Transport section sensor (PS2)	FS control board (FSCB)

		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (Electrical component)	
1	Check the initial check items.	-	-	
2	PS1 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN10FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4	
3	PS2 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN6FSCB-3 (ON)	B-2	
4	FSCB replacement	-	-	

3.3.6 Main tray section misfeed

A. Detection timing

Туре	Description
Main tray section misfeed	The storage section sensor (PS7) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the entrance sensor (PS1) has been unblocked by the media.
detection	The storage section sensor (PS7) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the entrance sensor (PS1) has been blocked by the media.
Detection of media left in main tray section	The storage section sensor (PS7) is blocked when the main switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Entrance sensor (PS1) Storage section sensor (PS7)	FS control board (FSCB)

		WIRING DIAGRAM		
Step	Action	Control signal	Location (Electrical component)	
1	Check the initial check items.	-	-	
2	PS1 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN10FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4	
3	PS7 I/O, sensor check	FSCB CN9FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4	
4	FSCB replacement	-	-	

4. Error codes

4.1 Trouble code list (Service call)

• The CPU performs a self-diagnosis on the condition of the unit, and if a malfunction is detected, the warning appears with the service call ID in the display.

Code	Item	Detection Timing
0B30	Aligning plate drive malfunction	 The aligning plate home position sensor (PS6) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the main switch is set to ON. The aligning plate home position sensor (PS6) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the align motor (M2) is energized (Start to align operation). The aligning plate home position sensor (PS6) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the align motor (M2) is energized (Start to align operation).
0B47	Media holding drive malfunction	 The media level sensor/1 (PS9) is not transmissive even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray up/down motor (M6) is turned ON and the tray upper sensor (PS12) is shaded.
0B48	Exit roller pressure/ retraction malfunction	 The exit roller sensor (PS8) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the exit roller up/down motor (M5) is energized (beginning of pressure operation). The exit roller sensor (PS8) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the exit roller up/down motor (M5) is energized (beginning of retraction operation).
0B4A	Aligning belt pressure/ retraction malfunction	 The aligning belt sensor (PS11) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the aligning belt up/down solenoid (SL3) is energized (beginning of retraction operation). The aligning belt sensor (PS11) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the aligning belt up/down solenoid (SL3) is energized (beginning of pressure operation).
0B4C	Media ejector motor malfunction	 The media ejector sensor (PS5) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the media ejector motor (M1) is energized (Stacks of prints ejection). The media ejector sensor (PS5) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the media ejector motor (M1) is energized (Start to move to the home position).
0BA0	Tray up/down motor ascent/descent drive malfunction	 The media level sensor/1 (PS9) and the media level sensor/2 (PS10) are not blocked and unblocked even after the set period time has elapsed after the tray up/down motor (M6) is energized. The tray upper sensor (PS12) and the tray lower sensor (PS13) are not blocked and unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the tray up/down motor (M6) is turned ON.
0BE1	Fan motor malfunction	 The fan motor lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined consecutive period of time while the fan motor remains ener- gized.
133B	Communication mal- function	 Contact the responsible people of KONICA MINOLTA before tak- ing some countermeasures.
3FFB	Flash ROM malfunc- tion	 Data of flash ROM of the finishing options is determined to be faulty when the power is turned ON.

4.2 Solution

4.2.1 0B30: Aligning plate drive malfunction

Relevant electrical parts	
Align motor (M2) FS control board (FSCB)	
Aligning plate home position sensor (PS6)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the M2 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M2 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M2 operation check	FSCB CN12FSCB-1 to 4	G-6
4	PS6 I/O check	FSCB CN9FSCB-6 (ON)	B-3 to 4
5	FSCB replacement	-	-

4.2.2 0B47: Media holding drive malfunction

Relevant electrical parts	
Tray up/down motor (M6) Tray upper sensor (PS12) Media level sensor/1 (PS9)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the M6 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M6 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M6 operation check	FSCB CN22FSCB-1 to 2	G-2
4	PS12 I/O check	FSCB CN5FSCB-4 (ON)	G-2 to 3
5	PS9 I/O check	FSCB CN8FSCB-3 (ON)	B-3
6	FSCB replacement	-	_

4.2.3 0B48: Exit roller pressure/retraction malfunction

Relevant electrical parts	
Exit roller up/down motor (M5) Exit roller sensor (PS8)	FS control board (FSCB)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the M5 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M5 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M5 operation check	FSCB CN20FSCB-1 to 4	G-3
4	PS8 I/O check	FSCB CN2FSCB-3 (ON)	B-1
5	FSCB replacement	-	-

4.2.4 0B4A: Aligning belt pressure/retraction malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
Aligning belt up/down solenoid (SL3) Aligning belt sensor (PS11)	FS control board (FSCB)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the SL3 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	SL3 operation check	FSCB CN19FSCB-2 (ON)	G-3 to 4
3	PS11 I/O check	FSCB CN11FSCB-3 (ON)	B-4 to 5
4	FSCB replacement	-	_

4.2.5 0B4C: Media ejector motor malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
Media ejector motor (M1) Media ejector sensor (PS5)	FS control board (FSCB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the M1 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	-
2	Check M1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	_	-
3	M1 operation check	FSCB CN21FSCB-3 to 6	G-3
4	PS5 I/O check	FSCB CN9FSCB-9 (ON)	B-3
5	FSCB replacement	_	_

4.2.6 0BA0: Tray up/down motor ascent/descent drive malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
Tray up/down motor (M6) Media level sensor/1 (PS9) Media level sensor/2 (PS10) Tray upper sensor (PS12) Tray lower sensor (PS13)	FS control board (FSCB)	

	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step		Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the M6 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M6 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M6 operation check	FSCB CN22FSCB-1 to 2	G-2
4	PS9 I/O check	FSCB CN8FSCB-3 (ON)	B-3
5	PS10 I/O check	FSCB CN8FSCB-6 (ON)	B-3
6	PS12 I/O check	FSCB CN5FSCB-4 (ON)	G-2 to 3
7	PS13 I/O check	FSCB CN5FSCB-1 (ON)	G-2
8	FSCB replacement	-	-

4.2.7 0BE1: Fan motor malfunction

Relevant electrical parts	
Fan motor (FM1)	FS control board (FSCB)

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the FM1 connector for proper con- nection and correct as necessary.	_	_
2	Check FM1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	_	_
3	FM1 operation check	FSCB CN13FSCB-2 (LOCK)	G-6
4	FSCB replacement	-	-

4.2.8 133B: Communication malfunction

Relevant electrical parts	
FS control board (FSCB) MFP board (MFPB)	

		WIRING DIAGRAM	
Step	Action	Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Check the FSCB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	_	-
2	Check the MFPB connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	_	-
3	FSCB replacement	-	-
4	MFPB replacement	-	-

4.2.9 3FFB: Flash ROM malfunction

Relevant electrical parts		
FS control board (FSCB)		
	WIRING DIAGRAM	

		WIRING DIAG	RAM
Step	Action	Control Signal	Location (Electrical component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the main switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the main switch.	-	-
2	The firmware data is overwritten.	-	-
3	FSCB replacement	-	-

Blank Page



© 2006 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Printed in Japan DDA011-A-FE1